Ensure that you read the Safety Precautions (pp. 252 – 261).
Confirming the Package Contents

The following items are included in the package. If something is missing please contact the retail outlet at which you purchased the product.

1. Camera
2. AA-size Alkaline Batteries (×4)
3. Interface Cable IFC-400PCU
4. Stereo Video Cable STV-250N
5. Neck Strap NS-DC7
6. Lens Cap
7. Wireless Controller WL-DC300
8. Lithium Battery (CR2025) for Wireless Controller
9. Lens Hood LH-DC50
10. Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk
11. Warranty Card
12. “Canon Customer Support” Leaflet
13. User Guides
   - Camera User Guide (this guide)
   - Direct Print User Guide (Connecting the camera to a printer)
   - Software Starter Guide (Connecting the camera to a computer)

See the PDF manuals available on the Canon website. http://web.canon.jp/imaging/information-e.html

- ZoomBrowser EX/ImageBrowser Software User Guide

A memory card is not included.
Let’s Get Started!
This guide is divided into the following two sections.

First...

Getting Started

This section explains how to prepare the camera for use and the basics of shooting, viewing and printing images. Start out by familiarizing yourself with the camera and mastering the basics.

Next...

Learning More

Once you have mastered the basics, use the camera’s many features to shoot more challenging photos. Details on using each function, including how to connect the camera to a television to view images and using the Wireless Controller are described in this section.
# Table of Contents

Items marked with a ★ are lists or charts that summarize camera functions or procedures.

Please Read ................................................................. 7

## Getting Started ...................................................... 9

- Preparations .......................................................... 10
- Shooting Still Images (Auto Mode) .......................... 17
- Viewing Still Images ................................................. 19
- Erasing ................................................................. 20
- Printing ................................................................. 21
- Shooting Movies ...................................................... 24
- Viewing Movies ........................................................ 26
- Downloading Images to a Computer ......................... 27
- System Map ............................................................ 34

## Learning More ...................................................... 39

### Components Guide .............................................. 40

- Using the Control Dial ............................................. 43
- Using the Play Button ............................................. 44
- Power Lamp and Indicator ........................................ 45

### Basic Operations ................................................. 47

- ★ Menus and Settings ............................................... 47
- ★ Information Displayed on the LCD Monitor (Viewfinder) and Menus .............................................. 49
- The LCD Monitor and Viewfinder Display .................. 62
- Customizing Display Information .............................. 65

### Commonly Used Shooting Functions ....................... 67

- ★ Using the Optical Zoom ........................................ 67
- Using the Digital Zoom/Digital Tele-Converter ............. 68
Using the Flash ................................. 72
Shooting Close-ups (Macro/Super Macro) .......... 73
Using the Self-Timer ............................. 75
Changing the Aspect Ratio ......................... 80
Changing the Recording Pixels (Still Images) .... 81
Changing the Compression (Still Images) .......... 83
Setting the Image Stabilizer Function ............. 84
ISO Adjusting the ISO Speed .................... 86
Reducing Camera Shake When Shooting (Auto ISO Shift) 87

Shooting Using the Mode Dial .................... 89
Mode Dial ........................................ 89
Movie Shooting .................................. 90
Setting the Recording Functions ................. 95
Shooting Modes for Specific Scenes ............. 97
Program AE .................................... 101
Setting the Shutter Speed ....................... 102
Setting the Aperture ............................ 104
Manually Setting the Shutter Speed and Aperture 106
Shooting Panoramic Images (Stitch Assist) ...... 108

Various Shooting Methods ..................... 110
Continuous Shooting ........................... 110
Setting the Flash ................................ 112
Checking the Focus and People’s Expressions ... 115
Switching between Focus Settings ............... 119
Selecting an AF Frame Mode .................... 120
Selecting a Subject to Focus On (Face Select and Track) 124
Shooting with Servo AF ......................... 126
Shooting Hard-to-Focus Subjects (Focus Lock, AF Lock, Manual Focus, Safety MF) .......... 127
Focus Bracketing (Focus-BKT Mode) ............. 132
Locking the Exposure Setting (AE Lock) ........ 133
Locking the Flash Exposure Setting (FE Lock) .... 135
Adjusting the Exposure Compensation ........... 136
Shooting while Brightening Dark Areas (i-Contrast) 137
Auto Exposure Bracketing (AEB Mode) .......... 138
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Switching between Metering Modes</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Tone (White Balance)</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shooting in a My Colors Mode</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the Colors and Shooting</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Categorizing Images Automatically (Auto Category)</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving Custom Settings</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registering Functions to the Button</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting My Menu</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Playback/Erasing</strong></td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing Magnified Images</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing Images in Sets of 12 (Index Playback)</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking the Focus and People’s Expressions</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Focus Check Display)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumping to Images</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organizing Images by Category (My Category)</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimming a Portion of an Image</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing Movies</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing Movies</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotating Images in the Display</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback with Transition Effects</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automated Playback (Slide Shows)</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Correction Function</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brightening Dark Areas (i-Contrast)</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Effects with the My Colors Function</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resizing Images</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching Sound Memos to Images</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound-Only Recording (Sound Recorder)</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protecting Images</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erasing Images</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Print Settings/Transfer Settings</strong></td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the DPOF Print Settings</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the DPOF Transfer Settings</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Configuring the Camera</strong></td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Saving Function</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the World Clock</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Level Formatting Memory Cards</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resetting the File Number</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating an Image Destination (Folder)</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Auto Rotate Function</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resetting Settings to Their Default Values</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Connecting to a TV</strong></td>
<td><strong>231</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shooting/Playback Using a TV</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting to a High-Definition TV Using the HDMI Cable (Sold Separately)</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Customizing the Camera (My Camera Settings)</strong></td>
<td><strong>234</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing My Camera Settings</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registering My Camera Settings</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Troubleshooting</strong></td>
<td><strong>237</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>List of Messages</strong></td>
<td><strong>248</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Appendix</strong></td>
<td><strong>252</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety Precautions</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preventing Malfunctions</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the Wireless Controller</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attaching the Lens Hood</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the Power Kits (Sold Separately)</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using an Externally Mounted Flash (Sold Separately)</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replacing the Date Battery</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera Care and Maintenance</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specifications</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Index</strong></td>
<td><strong>291</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Addendum</strong></td>
<td><strong>295</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the Image Type</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode</strong></td>
<td><strong>300</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
About this Guide

Symbol Conventions in this Guide

This mark denotes issues that may affect the camera’s operation.

This mark denotes additional topics that complement the basic operating procedures.

Explanations in this guide are based on the camera’s default settings at time of purchase. The illustrations and screenshots used in this guide may differ from the actual camera.

You can use SD memory cards, SDHC (SD High Capacity) memory cards, MultiMediaCards, MMCplus cards and HC MMCplus cards in this camera. These are collectively referred to as memory cards in this guide.

Using the Flash

Available Shooting Modes  p. 300

Mode: Shooting ( )/
Playback ( )

Some functions may not be available in certain shooting modes. If there is no notation to that effect, the function may be used in all modes.

Raise the flash

Available Shooting Modes  p. 300
Please Read

Test Shots

Before you try to photograph important subjects, we highly recommend that you shoot several trial images to confirm that the camera is operating and being operated correctly.

Please note that Canon Inc., its subsidiaries and affiliates, and its distributors are not liable for any consequential damages arising from any malfunction of a camera or accessory, including memory cards, that results in the failure of an image to be recorded or to be recorded in a way that is machine readable.

Warning Against Copyright Infringement

Please note that Canon digital cameras are intended for personal use and should never be used in a manner that infringes upon or contravenes international or domestic copyright laws and regulations. Please be advised that in certain cases the copying of images from performances, exhibitions, or commercial properties by means of a camera or other device may contravene copyright or other legal rights even if the image was shot for personal use.

Warranty Limitations

This camera’s warranty is only effective in the country of sale. If a problem arises while the camera is in use abroad, please convey it back to the country of sale before proceeding with a warranty claim to a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

For Canon Customer Support contacts, please see the customer support list supplied with your camera.
Camera Body Temperature
If your camera is used for prolonged periods, the camera body may become warm. Please be aware of this and take care when operating the camera for an extended period. This is not a malfunction.

About the LCD Monitor and Viewfinder
The LCD monitor and viewfinder are produced with extremely high-precision manufacturing techniques. More than 99.99% of the pixels operate to specification. Less than 0.01% of the pixels may occasionally misfire or appear as red or black dots. This has no effect on the recorded image and does not constitute a malfunction.

Video Format
Please set the camera’s video signal format to the one used in your region before using it with a TV monitor (p. 231).

Language Setting
Please see Setting the Display Language (p. 15) to change the language setting.
Getting Started

- Preparations
- Shooting Still Images
- Viewing Still Images
- Erasing
- Printing
- Shooting Movies
- Viewing Movies
- Downloading Images to a Computer
- System Map
Preparations

Installing the Batteries and Memory Card

1. Slide the cover lock (①) and hold it open while sliding the cover (②) and opening it (③).

2. Install four batteries.

3. Close the cover (④), and press downward as you slide it until it clicks into place (⑤).
To Remove the Batteries
Open the cover and remove the batteries.

⚠️ Take care that you do not drop the batteries.

Installing the Memory Card

1. Slide the cover (①) and open it (②).

2. Insert the memory card until it clicks into place.

- Confirm that the write protect tab is unlocked (only SD and SDHC memory cards).
- Check the card for the correct orientation.
3. Close the cover (3) and slide until it clicks (4).

![Image of camera with cover closed and slid]

Ensure that the memory card is correctly oriented before inserting it in the camera. Inserting it backward may cause the camera to fail to recognize the memory card or to malfunction.

**To Remove the Memory Card**

Push the memory card with your finger until the memory card clicks and then release it.

![Image of memory card being pushed and released]

**Attaching/Removing the Lens Cap**

Press both sides of the lens cap (1), and remove it (2).

- To avoid losing the lens cap, we recommend clipping it to the neck strap after removing it (p. 13).
- When not in use, store the camera with the lens cap attached.

Be sure to remove the lens cap before turning on the camera.
Getting Started

You can use the LCD monitor to compose pictures before shooting, operate menus or play back images. You can position the LCD monitor in the following ways.

1. **Move it right or left.**

2. **Tilt it forward 180 degrees toward the lens or backward 90 degrees.**
   
   When the LCD monitor is tilted 180 degrees toward the lens, the displayed image is automatically flipped and reversed (Reverse Display function).
   
   * The Reverse Display function can be set to off (p. 55).

**Opening the LCD Monitor**

In order to avoid dropping the camera, we recommend attaching the neck strap before using the camera.

**Attaching the Neck Strap**

Pull the strap tight in the buckle so that it does not slip. Perform the same steps on the other side of the camera. You can also clip the lens cap to the strap.
3. Fold the LCD monitor back against the camera body until it clicks into place.
   When the LCD monitor clicks into place, the image will display normally (not reversed).

Always keep the LCD monitor closed with the display facing the camera body when the camera is not in use. When you push the LCD monitor until you hear the clicking sound, the LCD monitor will automatically turn off, and the image will display in the viewfinder.

### Setting the Date and Time

The Date/Time settings menu will appear the first time the power is turned on.

1. Press the power button.
2. Select the month, day, year and time, and the display order.
   1. Use the ← or → button to select an option.
   2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to set the value.
      • You can also set the value by using the control dial.
3. Press the FUNC button.
To Change a Previously Set Date/Time

Use the following procedures to display the Date/Time settings menu, and then perform Steps 2 and 3 on the previous page.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Use the ← or → button to select the (Set up) menu.
3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Date/Time].
4. Press the button.

The date/time setting screen will appear when the capacity of the lithium date/time battery is depleted (p. 278).

Setting the Display Language

You can change the language displayed in the LCD monitor menus and messages.

1. Press the (Playback) button.
2. Hold down the button and press the MENU button.
3. Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to select a language.
4. Press the button.
## Formatting Memory Cards

You should always format a new memory card or one from which you wish to erase all images and other data.

1. Press the power button.
2. Select [Format].
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. Use the \( \uparrow \) or \( \downarrow \) button to select the \( \Rightarrow \) menu.
   3. Use the \( \uparrow \) or \( \downarrow \) button to select [Format].
   4. Press the \( \text{FUNC/SET} \) button.
3. Format a memory card.
   1. Use the \( \uparrow \) or \( \downarrow \) button to select [OK].
   2. Press the \( \text{FUNC/SET} \) button.

Please note that formatting (initializing) a memory card erases all data, including protected images (p. 199) and sound data recorded with the sound recorder (p. 197).
1. Press the power button.
   - The start-up sound will play and the start-up image will display in the LCD monitor. However, when switching to the viewfinder display and starting, the start-up image is not displayed and there is no startup sound.
   - Pressing the power button again turns the power off.

2. Select a shooting mode.
   1. Set the mode dial to AUTO.

3. Aim the camera at the subject.

Avoiding Camera Shake
Keep your arms tight against your body while holding the camera firmly by the sides. Using a tripod is also effective.

4. Press the shutter button lightly (halfway) to focus.
   - When the camera focuses, it beeps twice.
   - If Display blinks red, we recommend shooting with a flash (p. 72) (the message “Raise the flash” also appears in AUTO mode).
5. Press the shutter button fully (all the way) to shoot.

- The shutter sound will play once and the image will record.
- Movement of the camera or subject while the shutter sound is playing may result in blurred images.
- Recorded images are displayed on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) for approximately 2 seconds immediately after shooting (Rec. Review). You can shoot by pressing the shutter button even when an image is being displayed.
- If you hold the shutter button down after a shot, the image will continue to display.
- The indicator will blink red and the file will record to the memory card.

**To Shoot Images in Focus**
The camera automatically sets the focus when you press the shutter button halfway*.

* The shutter button has a two-stage action. Pressing it down to the first stage is referred to as “pressing halfway”.

![Correct vs Incorrect Focus](image)

- **Press halfway to set the focus**
- **Beep, beep…**
- **Press fully**
- **Recording: Blinks red**

- **Correct AF Frame**
  - An AF frame will display in green on the LCD monitor at the point of focus.

- **Incorrect AF Frame**

---

**Mute Setting**
Pressing the 🎤 button while turning on the camera power will silence all camera sounds. You can change the setting in [Mute] in the Set up menu (p. 58).
Viewing Still Images

1. Press the (Playback) button.

2. Use the ← or → button to display the image you wish to view.
   - Use the ← button to move to the previous image and the → button to move to the next image.
   - The images advance more quickly if you keep the button pressed, but they will appear coarse.
   - You can also select images by using the control dial. Turning it counterclockwise displays the previous image while turning it clockwise displays the next image.

   - In the Playback menu, you can set [Resume] to either [Last seen]* or [Last shot]. (* Default setting)
   - If you select [Last seen], the last image viewed will display (Resume Playback).
   - The following actions will display the most recent image regardless of the [Resume] settings: shooting an image, changing the memory card, or editing an image on the memory card using a computer.
Erasing

1. Press the  (Playback) button.

2. Use the ← or → button to select an image to erase and press the  button. You can also select images by using the control dial.

3. Confirm that [Erase] is selected and press the  button. To exit instead of erasing, select [Cancel].

Please note that erased images cannot be recovered. Exercise adequate caution before erasing an image.
1. **Connect the camera to a direct print compatible printer.**
   - Open the camera’s terminal cover and insert the interface cable all the way into the terminal.
   - See the printer’s user guide for connection instructions.
   - Since this camera uses a standard protocol (PictBridge), you can use it with other PictBridge-compliant printers in addition to Canon-brand printers.
     For details, see the *Direct Print User Guide*.

2. **Turn on the printer.**

3. **Press the camera’s ᴂ (Playback) button to turn on the power.**
   - The ᴂ button will light blue.
4. Use the ← or → button to select an image to print and press the button.
   - The button will blink blue and printing will start.
   - You can also select images by using the control dial.
   - After you finish printing, turn off the camera and the printer and disconnect the interface cable.

This camera does not allow you to insert the shooting date into an image while shooting (date stamping). However, you can use the following method to imprint the date while printing.
- Set with the camera’s Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) function (p. 209).
  Set [Date] option to [On] in [Print Settings] in the (Print) menu.
- Connect the camera to a printer and imprint the date.
  See the Direct Print User Guide.
- Insert a memory card into the printer and imprint the date.
  See your printer’s user guide.
- Use the supplied software.
  See the Software Starter Guide.
Printing from a Print List

You can add images directly to a print list by merely pressing the button immediately after shooting or playing back an image. You can then print the images from the print list easily, when connecting the camera to a printer.

Add to the Print List

1. Press the button (still images only).
2. Add to the print list.
   1. Use the or button to select the number of print copies.
   2. Use the or button to select [Add].
   3. Press the button.
      • To remove an image from the print list, press the button again, use the or button to select [Remove] and press the FUNC./SET button.

Printing Images in a Print List

This explanation is based on the use of a Canon SELPHY ES series or SELPHY CP series printer.

1. Connect the camera to the printer.
2. Print the image.
   1. Use the or button to select [Print now].
      • You can use the or button to confirm the images added to the print list.
   2. Press the button.
      • Printing will start.
      • If printing is halted and resumed, printing will start from the next image in the queue.
Shooting Movies

No matter what position the mode dial is in, you can shoot movies just pressing the movie button. Sound can be recorded in stereo.

1. Press the power button.
2. Aim the camera at the subject.

- Do not touch the microphone while recording.
- Sounds such as from pressing buttons will be recorded in the movie.
3. Press the movie button to shoot.
   - Recording starts.
   - During recording, the elapsed recording time and [●Rec.] will display in the LCD monitor.

4. Press the movie button again to stop recording.
   - The indicator will blink red and the data will be recorded onto the memory card.
   - Max. Clip Size: 4 GB*.
   - Sound is recorded in stereo.
   - Recording will stop automatically when the maximum recording time elapses, or the built-in memory or memory card become full.

* Even before the recording size reaches 4 GB, recording will stop at the moment the recording time reaches 1 hour. Depending on memory card capacity and data write speed, recording may stop before the file size reaches 4 GB or the recording time reaches 1 hour.

When shooting full high-definition movies, see p. 90.
Viewing Movies

1. Press the (Playback) button.

2. Use the ← or → button to display a movie and press the button.
   - Images with a icon are movies.
   - You can also select images by using the control dial.

3. Use the ← or → button to select (Play) and press the button.
   - The movie will start playing.
   - If you press the FUNC./SET button during playback, you can pause and restart the movie.
   - You can adjust the playback volume with the ↑ or ↓ button.
Download Images to a Computer

We recommend using the supplied software.

**Items to Prepare**
- Camera and computer
- Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk supplied with the camera
- Interface cable supplied with the camera

**System Requirements**
Please install the software on a computer meeting the following minimum requirements.

**Windows**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS</th>
<th>Windows Vista (including Service Pack 1)</th>
<th>Windows XP Service Pack 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computer Model</td>
<td>The above OS should be pre-installed on computers with built-in USB ports.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Pentium 1.3 GHz or higher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movie</td>
<td>Core2 Duo 2.6 GHz or higher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAM</td>
<td>1 GB or more</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movie</td>
<td>2 GB or more</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>USB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free Hard Disk Space</td>
<td>- Canon Utilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ZoomBrowser EX : 200 MB or more</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- PhotoStitch : 40 MB or more</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Digital Photo Professional : 200 MB or more</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>1,024 × 768 pixels/High Color (16 bit) or better</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Macintosh

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS</th>
<th>Mac OS X (v10.4 – v10.5)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computer Model</td>
<td>The above OS should be pre-installed on computers with built-in USB ports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>Still Image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAM</td>
<td>Still Image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td>USB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free Hard Disk Space</td>
<td>• Canon Utilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- ImageBrowser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- PhotoStitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Digital Photo Professional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>1,024 × 768 pixels/ 32,000 Colors or better</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Preparing to Download Images

1. Installing the software.

   Windows

   1. Place the Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk in the computer’s CD-ROM drive.
   2. Click [Easy Installation].
      Follow the onscreen messages to proceed with the installation.

   3. Click [Restart] or [Finish] once the installation is complete.
      When the installation is finished, [Restart] or [Finish] will display. Click the button that appears.

   4. Remove the CD-ROM from the drive when your normal desktop screen appears.
Macintosh
Double-click the icon in the CD-ROM window. When the installer panel appears, click [Install]. Follow the onscreen instructions to proceed.

2. Connecting the camera to a computer.

   1. Connect the supplied interface cable to the computer’s USB port and to the camera’s DIGITAL terminal.
      Open the camera’s terminal cover and insert the interface cable all the way into the terminal.

3. Preparing to download images to the computer.

   1. Press the (Playback) button to turn on the camera.
      • The power lamp will light yellow.
4. Open CameraWindow.

**Windows**
Select [Canon CameraWindow] and click [OK].

CameraWindow appears.

**Macintosh**
CameraWindow will appear when you establish a connection between the camera and computer. If it fails to appear, click the [CameraWindow] icon on the Dock (the bar which appears at the bottom of the desktop).

Preparations for downloading images are now finished. Please proceed to the *Downloading Images Using the Camera (Direct Transfer)* section (p. 31).

Refer to the *Software Starter Guide* for details on downloading images using the computer.
Downloading Images Using the Camera (Direct Transfer)

Use this method to download images using camera operations.

Install the software before downloading images via the direct transfer method for the first time (p. 28).

1. Confirm that the Direct Transfer menu is displayed on the camera’s LCD monitor.
   - The button will light blue.
   - Press the MENU button if the Direct Transfer menu fails to appear.

2. Press the button.
   - Images not previously downloaded will download to the computer.
You can also use the following options in the Direct Transfer menu to set the method for downloading images.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>All Images</th>
<th>Transfers and saves all images to the computer.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New Images</td>
<td>Transfers and saves to the computer only the images that have not been previously transferred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPOF Trans. Images</td>
<td>Transfers and saves to the computer only the images with DPOF Transfer Order settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select &amp; Transfer</td>
<td>Transfers and saves single images to the computer as you view and select them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wallpaper</td>
<td>Transfers and saves single images to the computer as you view and select them. The transferred images display as the background on the computer desktop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**All Images/New Images/DPOF Trans. Images**

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select , , or and press the button.
   - The images will download. The button will blink blue while downloading is in progress.
   - The display will return to the Direct Transfer menu when the download is complete.
   - Pressing the FUNC./SET button will cancel a download in progress.

**Select & Transfer/Wallpaper**

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select , or and press the button (or button).
2. Use the ← or → button to select images to download and press the "button.
   • The images will download. The "button will blink blue while downloading is in progress.

3. Press the MENU button after downloading finishes.
   • You will return to the Direct Transfer menu.

Only JPEG images can be downloaded as wallpaper for a computer.

The option selected with the "button is retained even when the camera’s power is turned off. The previous setting will be in effect the next time the Direct Transfer menu is displayed. The image selection screen will appear directly when the [Select & Transfer] or the [Wallpaper] option was last selected.

Click " at the top right of CameraWindow, and select an application from the window that appears.

Windows

Macintosh

When you click [×] at the bottom right of CameraWindow, the selected application starts up.
By default, the downloaded images are saved into folders according to their shooting dates.
Supplied with Camera

- Speedlite 220EX
- Speedlite 430EX II*5
- Speedlite 580EX II*5
- Speedlite Transmitter ST-E2
- Lens Hood LH-DC50
- Interface Cable IFC-400PCU*1
- Canon Digital Camera Solution Disk
- Stereo Video Cable STV-250N*1
- Neck Strap NS-DC7
- Lens Cap
- Wireless Controller WL-DC300
- Lithium Battery (CR2025) for Wireless Controller
- AA-size Alkaline Batteries (×4)
- Compact Power Adapter CA-PS700
- Battery and Charger Kit CBK4-300*4
  - Battery Charger CB-5AH/CB-5AHE
  - AA-size NiMH batteries NB-3AH (×4)
    - NiMH Battery NB4-300 (set of 4 AA-size) also available separately.
*1 Also available for purchase separately.
*2 See the user guide supplied with the printer for more information on the printer and interface cables.
*3 This camera can also be connected to the CP-10/CP-100/CP-200/CP-300.
*4 Battery and Charger Kit CBK4-200 can also be used.
*5 Speedlite 430EX and 580EX may also be used.
Accessories (Sold Separately)

The following camera accessories are sold separately. Some accessories are not sold in some regions, or may no longer be available.

Flash

• EX-Series Speedlites
  Speedlites for Canon EOS models. Subjects are optimally illuminated for crisp, natural images.
  • Speedlite 220EX/430EX II*/580EX II*
    * Speedlite 430EX and 580EX may also be used.
• Speedlite Transmitter ST-E2
  This allows the wireless control of slave (remote) Speedlite flashes (except the Speedlite 220EX).

Power Supplies

• Compact Power Adapter CA-PS700
  This kit lets you power the camera from any standard household power outlet. Recommended to power a camera for an extended period of time or when connecting to a computer. (Cannot be used to charge the camera batteries.)
• Battery and Charger Kit CBK4-300
  This dedicated battery charger kit includes both a charger unit and four rechargeable AA-size NiMH (nickel metal hydride) batteries. Convenient when taking or playing back large numbers of images. You can also purchase NiMH Battery NB4-300, a set of four rechargeable AA-size NiMH batteries separately.
Other Accessories

• **Interface Cable IFC-400PCU**
  Use this cable to connect the camera to a computer, Compact Photo Printer (SELPHY series), or to a Bubble Jet printer*.
  * Refer to your Bubble Jet printer user guide.

• **Stereo Video Cable STV-250N**
  Use this cable to connect the camera to a TV set. Sound is recorded in stereo.

• **HDMI Cable HTC-100**
  Use this cable to connect the camera to the HDMI™ terminal on a high-definition TV set.
Direct Print Compatible Printers

Canon offers the following separately sold printers for use with the camera. You can produce photo quality prints quickly and easily by connecting them to the camera with a single cable and operating the camera’s controls.

- Compact Photo Printers (SELPHY series)
- Bubble Jet Printers (PIXMA series)

For more information, visit your nearest Canon retailer.

Use of genuine Canon accessories is recommended.

This product is designed to achieve excellent performance when used with genuine Canon accessories. Canon shall not be liable for any damage to this product and/or accidents such as fire, etc., caused by the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories (e.g., a leakage and/or explosion of a battery pack). Please note that this warranty does not apply to repairs arising out of the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories, although you may request such repairs on a chargeable basis.
Learning More
Components Guide

Front View

1. Zoom Lever (pp. 67, 158)
   - Shooting:  (Wide Angle)/  (Telephoto)
   - Playback:  (Index)/  (Magnify)
2. Shutter Button (p. 17)
3. Strap Mount (p. 13)
4. Power Button/Power Lamp (pp. 17, 24)
5. Remote Sensor (p. 263)
6. Flash (p. 72)
7. Microphone (pp. 24, 196, 197)
8. Speaker
10. Lens Hood Mount*
11. Lens

*Lens Hood

By attaching the supplied LH-DC50 Lens Hood to the Lens Hood Mount (groove), you can reduce the amount of unnecessary light that enters the lens while shooting backlit or wide-angle photos (p. 266).
Back View

1. Screen (LCD Monitor) (p. 62)
2. Viewfinder (p. 62)
3. HDMI OUT Mini Terminal (p. 233)
4. DIGITAL Terminal (pp. 21, 29)
5. DC IN (Power Input) Terminal (p. 269)
6. A/V OUT (Audio/Video Output) Terminal (p. 231)
7. Terminal Cover
8. Memory Card Slot Cover (p. 11)
9. Battery Cover (p. 10)
10. Cover Lock (p. 10)
11. Tripod Socket
### Controls

1. (Print/Share) Button (pp. 21, 31, 154)
2. (Flash)/ (Microphone) Button (pp. 72, 196, 197)
3. (Aspect Ratio) Button (p. 80)
4. Diopter Adjustment Dial (p. 63)
5. Hot Shoe (p. 270)
6. Movie Button (pp. 24, 90)
7. Mode Dial (pp. 17, 24, 89)
8. (Playback) Button (pp. 19, 26)
9. (Exposure)/ (Jump) Button (pp. 139, 162)
10. (AF Frame Selector)/ (Single Image Erase) Button (pp. 20, 120)
11. FUNC./SET (Function/Set) Button (p. 47)
12. MENU Button (p. 48)
13. Indicator (p. 45)
14. (Display) Button (p. 62)
15. (Macro)/ Button (p. 73)
16. (Manual Focus)/ Button (p. 127)
17. ISO/ Button (p. 72)
18. (Continuous Shooting)/ (Self-Timer/Wireless Delay)/ Button (pp. 75, 110)
19. Control Dial (p. 43)
Using the Control Dial

Turning the control dial counterclockwise is equivalent to pressing the ◄ button, while turning the control dial clockwise is equivalent to pressing the ► button (it is equivalent to pressing the ↑ or ↓ button with some functions).

You can perform the following operations when you turn the control dial.

■ The Shooting Functions
  • Selecting the shooting modes (p. 97)
  • Selecting items in ◄/►/◇/.faces (pp. 72, 75, 110)
  • Selecting items in the FUNC. menu (p. 47)
  • Selecting the shooting direction in Stitch Assist mode (p. 108)
  • Selecting the shutter speed and the aperture value (pp. 102, 104)
  • Moving the AF Frame (p. 122)
  • Adjusting the focus in manual focus mode (p. 129)
  • Program Shift (p. 134)
  • Exposure compensation (p. 136)

■ The Playback Functions
  • Selecting an image (pp. 19, 158, 159, 162)
  • Operation with various settings or when editing (pp. 179, 196, 197, 209, 217)
  • Various operations and when playing back movies or editing (pp. 26, 170, 174)

■ The Shooting and Playback Functions
  • Selecting a menu item and making settings (pp. 47, 48)
  • Changing the clock display color (p. 46)
  • Operation when setting My Camera contents (p. 234)
Using the ▶ Button

The ▶ button can turn the camera on/off and switch between the shooting/playback modes.

* The amount of time before the lens automatically retracts can be set in [Lens Retract] in the ▶ (Set up) menu (p. 59).
**Power Lamp and Indicator**

The power lamp and the indicator on the back of the camera will light or blink under the following conditions.

- **Power Lamp**
  - Orange: Shooting mode
  - Green: Playback mode/Printer connection
  - Yellow: Computer connection

- **Indicator**
  - Blinking Red: Image recording/reading/erasing/transferring (when connected to a computer or printer)

⚠️ Never do the following while the indicator on the back blinks red. These actions may corrupt image data.
- Shake or jolt the camera.
- Shut off the power, or open the memory card slot cover and battery cover.
Displaying the Clock

You can display the current date and time for a 5-second* interval using the following two methods.

* Default setting.

① Hold the **FUNC./SET** button down while turning on the power.
② In a shooting/playback mode, hold the **FUNC./SET** button down for more than one second.

If you hold the camera horizontally, it displays the time. If you hold it vertically, the time and date display. If you use method ① to display the clock while holding the camera vertically, however, the clock will first display as if the camera were being held horizontally.

• You can change the display color by pressing the ◄ or ► button or turning the control dial.
• The clock display will cease when the display interval is over or when a button is operated.
• The clock’s display interval can be changed in the [设置] menu (p. 59).
• The clock cannot be displayed in the magnified display or the index playback.
**Basic Operations**

**Menus and Settings**
Settings for the shooting or playback modes or such camera settings as the print settings, date/time and sounds are set using the FUNC. menu or the Rec., Play, Print, Set up, My Camera or My Menu menus.

**FUNC. Menu ( FUNC. Button)**
This menu sets many of the common shooting functions.

1. **Set the mode dial to the shooting mode you want to use.**
2. **Press the FUNC. button.**
3. **Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a menu item.** Some items may not be selectable in some shooting modes.
4. **Use the ← or → button to select an option for the menu item.**
   - Items showing the DISP. icon can be changed with the DISP. button.
   - After selecting an option, you can press the shutter button to shoot immediately. After shooting, the menu will appear again, allowing you to adjust the settings easily.
   - You can also use the control dial to select an option for the menu item.
5. **Press the FUNC. SET button.**
Rec., Play, Print, Set up, My Camera and My Menu (MENU Button)

Convenient settings for shooting, playback or printing can be set with these menus.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Use the  or  button to switch between menus.
   - You can also use the zoom lever to switch between menus.
   - The following menus are displayed.
     Shooting: Rec./ Set up/ My Camera/ My Menu
     Playback: Play/ Print/ Set up/ My Camera
3. Use the  or  button to select a menu item.
   - Some items may not be selectable in some shooting modes.
   - You can also use the control dial to select a menu item.
4. Use the  or  button to select an option.
   Menu items followed by an ellipsis (…) can only be set after pressing the FUNC./SET button to display the next menu. Press the FUNC./SET button again to confirm the setting and press the MENU button to return to the menu screen.
5. Press the MENU button.

• This example shows the Rec. menu when in AUTO mode.
### Information Displayed on the LCD Monitor (Viewfinder) and Menus

#### Available Shooting Modes

**Available Shooting Modes**  ➤ p. 300

### Shooting Mode

#### Information Displayed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information Displayed</th>
<th>Setting Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 White Balance or Recording Pixels, etc.</td>
<td>FUNC./SET button (FUNC. menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Time Zone ( )</td>
<td>MENU button (Set up menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Digital Tele-Converter (2.3x) (2.0x in 16:9 mode)/Digital Zoom Factor/Safety Zoom ( )</td>
<td>MENU button (Rec. menu), Zoom Lever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Camera Shake ( )</td>
<td>MENU button (Rec. menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Audio ( )</td>
<td>MENU button (Set up menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Auto Rotate ( )</td>
<td>MENU button (Set up menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Shooting Mode</td>
<td>Mode dial, Control dial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 i-Contrast ( )</td>
<td>MENU button (Rec. menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Flash ( )</td>
<td>¶ button, raise/lower the flash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Red-Eye Corr. ( )</td>
<td>MENU button ([Flash Control] menu in the Rec. menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 ISO Speed ( )</td>
<td>ISO button (ISO in SCN mode)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Setting Method

- **FUNC./SET button** (FUNC. menu)
- **MENU button** (Set up menu)
- **MENU button** (Rec. menu)
- **Mode dial, Control dial**
- **[Flash Control] menu** in the Rec. menu
- **ISO button** (ISO in SCN mode)
*1 This is not normally displayed. It appears when remaining available internal memory (buffer) is half or less during movie recording (when the buffer warning indicates full, shooting or recording may be stopped).

*2 “0” appears in red when no more recording space is available for either still images at the current number of recordable images, or movies. When both recording capacities are full, the “Memory card full” message appears.

### Information Displayed Setting Method

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information Displayed</th>
<th>Setting Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 Macro ( )/Super Macro ( )</td>
<td>button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Drive Mode ( )</td>
<td>button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Manual Focus (MF)</td>
<td>MF button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Create Folder ( )</td>
<td>MENU button (Set up menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Exposure Compensation ( -2 … +2 )</td>
<td>button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Exposure Shift Bar ( )</td>
<td>button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Grid Lines, 3:2 Guide</td>
<td>MENU button (Rec. menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 AE Lock/FE Lock</td>
<td>button</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### About the Battery Charge Indicator
When the battery charge is low, the following icon and message will display. They will not display during sufficient battery charge.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display on the LCD monitor</th>
<th>Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(blinking red)</td>
<td>Battery charge is low. Prepare to replace with new batteries soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change the batteries</td>
<td>The batteries are depleted. Replace with new batteries.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the “Raise the flash” message appears and the camera shake warning icon ( ) and the flash warning icon ( ) blink on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder), this indicates that a slow shutter speed may have been selected due to insufficient illumination. Use the following methods to shoot:
- Set the IS mode to any setting other than [Off] (p. 84)
- Raise the ISO speed (p. 86)
- Use the Auto ISO Shift (p. 87)
- Raise the flash to select a setting other than (p. 72)
- Attach the camera to a tripod or other device
### Playback Mode (Detailed)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information Displayed</th>
<th>Setting Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Print List</td>
<td><strong>Print List</strong> button, <strong>MENU</strong> button (Print menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Playback) i-Contrast/ Red-Eye Correction/Trimming/Resize/ My Colors ( ) Protection Status ( )</td>
<td><strong>MENU</strong> button (Play menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image with Sound Memo ( )</td>
<td><strong>Image with Sound Memo</strong> button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression (Still Images)/Recording Pixels (Still Images), Movie ( )</td>
<td><strong>FUNC./SET</strong> button (FUNC. menu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Category ( ) My Category ( )</td>
<td><strong>Auto Category</strong> function (Rec. menu), <strong>My Category</strong> function (Play menu)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following information may also be displayed with some images.

- ![Warning](image)
  - A sound file in a format other than the WAVE format is attached or the file format is not recognized.

- ![Warning](image)
  - JPEG image not conforming to Design rule for Camera File System Standards (p. 284).

- ![Warning](image)
  - RAW image

- ![Warning](image)
  - AVI data type

- ![Warning](image)
  - Unrecognized data type
● Information for images shot with other cameras may not display correctly.

● Overexposure Warning
In the following cases, overexposed portions of the image blink.
- When reviewing an image right after shooting in the LCD monitor (detailed display) or the viewfinder (detailed display).
- When using the detailed display mode during playback.

Histogram Function
The histogram is a graph that allows you to check the brightness of an image. You can also display the histogram in the P, TV, Av and M modes to check the brightness while shooting. The greater the bias toward the left in the graph, the darker the image. The greater the bias toward the right, the brighter the image. By using the exposure compensation function, you can correct the image brightness before shooting (p. 136).

Sample Histograms

![Dark Image](image1)
![Balanced Image](image2)
![Bright Image](image3)

You can change the shutter speed, aperture value and ISO speed to adjust the brightness of an image in the M mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shooting Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Menu Item</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Still Image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movie</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Settings using the , , , MF, ISO or button

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Reference Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flash</td>
<td>[Flash Options]</td>
<td>p. 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure Compensation</td>
<td>[-2 ... +2]</td>
<td>p. 136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro/Super Macro</td>
<td>[Macro Options]</td>
<td>p. 73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Focus</td>
<td>[MF]</td>
<td>p. 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO Speed</td>
<td>[ISO Options]</td>
<td>p. 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Mode</td>
<td>[Drive Mode Options]</td>
<td>pp. 75, 110, 262</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## FUNC. Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Reference Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My Colors</td>
<td>[My Colors Options]</td>
<td>p. 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bracket</td>
<td>[Bracket Options]</td>
<td>pp. 132, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Compensation/Flash Output</td>
<td>[Flash Options]</td>
<td>p. 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metering Mode</td>
<td>[Metering Mode Options]</td>
<td>p. 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording Pixels (Movie)</td>
<td>[Recording Pixels Options]</td>
<td>p. 93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording Pixels (Still Image)</td>
<td>[Recording Pixels Options]</td>
<td>p. 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression</td>
<td>[Compression Options]</td>
<td>p. 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu Item</td>
<td>Options</td>
<td>Summary/Reference Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF Frame</strong></td>
<td>Face Detect*/Center (P/Tv/Av/M: FlexiZone*/Face Detect)</td>
<td>p. 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF-Point Zoom</strong></td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td>p. 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Servo AF</strong></td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td>p. 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF Mode</strong></td>
<td>Continuous*/Single</td>
<td>p. 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Digital Zoom</strong></td>
<td>4:3 Standard*/Off/2.3x</td>
<td>p. 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16:9 Standard*/Off/2.0x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flash Control</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Mode</td>
<td>Auto*/Manual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Exp. Comp</td>
<td>–2 to 0* to +2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Output</td>
<td>Minimum*/Medium/Maximum</td>
<td>p. 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter Sync.</td>
<td>1st-curtain*/2nd-curtain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow Synchro</td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Corr.</td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Lamp</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety FE</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>i-Contrast</strong></td>
<td>Off*/Auto</td>
<td>p. 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Drive Settings</strong></td>
<td>FaceSelf-Timer: 1 – 10 (Default is 3 shots)</td>
<td>pp. 75, 262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-Timer: 10 sec.*, 2 sec., Custom Timer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delay: 0 – 10*, 15, 20, 30 sec. Shots: 1 – 10 (Default is 3 shots)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wireless Delay: 0, 2*, 10 sec.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spot AE Point</strong></td>
<td>Center*/AF Point</td>
<td>p. 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety Shift</strong></td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td>p. 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auto ISO Shift</strong></td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td>p. 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu Item</td>
<td>Options</td>
<td>Summary/Reference Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MF-Point Zoom</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
<td>p. 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety MF</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
<td>p. 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-assist Beam</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
<td>p. 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review (Rec. Review)</td>
<td>Off/2* – 10 seconds/Hold</td>
<td>You can set the length of time images display after being shot (p. 18).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review Info</td>
<td>Off*/Detailed/Focus Check</td>
<td>p. 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record RAW + L</td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td>p. 297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Original</td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td>p. 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse Disp.</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
<td>p. 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Category</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
<td>p. 152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS Mode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Still image)</td>
<td>Continuous*/Shoot Only/ Panning/Off</td>
<td>p. 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Movie)</td>
<td>Continuous*/Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Display</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD/Viewfinder</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shooting info.</td>
<td>Off<em>1/On</em>2</td>
<td>p. 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid Lines</td>
<td>Off<em>1/On</em>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2 Guide</td>
<td>Off*1 x2/On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histogram</td>
<td>Off<em>1/On</em>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Shortcut button</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Settings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Default setting for LCD monitor 1 and viewfinder display 1.
*2 Default setting for LCD monitor 2 and viewfinder display 2.
## Play Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Reference Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slide Show</td>
<td>p. 179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Category</td>
<td>p. 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erase</td>
<td>p. 203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protect</td>
<td>p. 199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-Contrast</td>
<td>p. 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Correction</td>
<td>p. 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trimming</td>
<td>p. 167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize</td>
<td>p. 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Colors</td>
<td>p. 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound Recorder</td>
<td>p. 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotate</td>
<td>p. 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer Order</td>
<td>p. 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resume</td>
<td>p. 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transition</td>
<td>p. 178</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Print Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Reference Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Print</td>
<td>Displays the print menu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select Images &amp; Qty.</td>
<td>Configures print settings for individual images as you view them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select Range</td>
<td>Selects a range of sequential images and makes print settings for all the images in that range.</td>
<td>p. 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Date</td>
<td>Configures print settings for images corresponding to the selected date.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Category</td>
<td>Configures print settings for images in the selected category.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Folder</td>
<td>Configures print settings for images in the selected folder.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select All Images</td>
<td>Configures print settings for all images.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear All Selections</td>
<td>Removes all print settings from images.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print Settings</td>
<td>Sets the print style.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu Item</td>
<td>Options</td>
<td>Summary/Reference Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mute</td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td>Set to [On] to silence all operation sounds (except for when the battery or memory card slot cover is opened during recording).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume</td>
<td>Off/ 1 / 2*/ 3 / 4 / 5</td>
<td>Adjusts the volume of the start-up sound, operation sound, self-timer sound, shutter sound and playback sound. The volume cannot be adjusted if [Mute] is set to [On].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start-up Vol.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts the volume of the start-up sound when the camera is turned on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Vol.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts the volume of the operation sound that beeps when any button other than the shutter button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selftimer Vol.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts the volume of the self-timer sound played 2 sec. before the shutter is released.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter Volume</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts the volume of the sound played when the shutter releases. The shutter sound does not play when a movie is recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback Vol.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Adjusts the volume of movie sounds, sound memos or sound recorder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio</td>
<td></td>
<td>p. 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mic Level</td>
<td>Auto*/Manual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level</td>
<td>–40 – 0 dB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind Filter</td>
<td>On/Off*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menu Item</td>
<td>Options</td>
<td>Summary/Reference Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD Brightness</td>
<td>(Normal)/Bright</td>
<td>Adjusts the brightness for the LCD monitor and viewfinder separately. (Display the location you wish to adjust the brightness for, and then configure the settings.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Saving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Power Down</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
<td>p. 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display Off</td>
<td>10 sec./20 sec./30 sec./1 min.*/2 min./3 min.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Zone</td>
<td>Home*/World</td>
<td>p. 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date/Time</td>
<td></td>
<td>p. 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock Display</td>
<td>0 – 5* – 10 sec./20 sec./30 sec./1 min./2 min./3 min.</td>
<td>p. 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format</td>
<td></td>
<td>p. 16 (You can also select a low level format (p. 223).)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Numbering</td>
<td>Continuous*/Auto Reset</td>
<td>p. 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create Folder</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create New Folder</td>
<td>Check mark (On)/No check mark (Off)</td>
<td>p. 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Create</td>
<td>Off*/Daily/Monday-Sunday/Monthly (Creation time also can be set)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Rotate</td>
<td>On*/Off</td>
<td>p. 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance Units</td>
<td>m/cm*/ft/in</td>
<td>Sets the units for the Zoom bar (p. 67) and the MF indicator distance unit (p. 129).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens Retract</td>
<td>1 minute*/0 seconds</td>
<td>Sets the lens retraction timing when switching from shooting mode to playback mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td></td>
<td>p. 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The connection method with the printer can be changed. Although it is normally not necessary to change the setting, select when printing the following types of images using the Canon compact photo printer SELPHY CP750/CP740/CP730/CP720/CP710/CP510.

- When printing a movie
- When borderless printing an image shot in (Widescreen 8M) or (Widescreen 2M) mode on wide size paper

As this setting will be stored to memory even when the power is turned off, return the mode to [Auto] before printing images other than movies or size images. (However, the connection method cannot be changed while connected to a printer.)
### My Camera Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Reference Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Theme</td>
<td>Selects a common theme for each My Camera settings item.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start-up Image</td>
<td>Sets the image displayed when the camera power is turned on.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start-up Sound</td>
<td>Sets the sound played when the camera power is turned on.</td>
<td>p. 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Sound</td>
<td>Sets the sound played when any button other than the shutter button is pressed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selftimer Sound</td>
<td>Sets the sound played 2 seconds before the shutter releases in self-timer mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter Sound</td>
<td>Sets the sound played when the shutter button is pressed. (There is no shutter sound for movies.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

My Camera Menu Contents

### My Menu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Reference Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My Menu Settings</td>
<td>p. 156</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The LCD Monitor and Viewfinder Display

Switching LCD Monitor Display Modes

Each press of the DISP. button, changes the display mode of the LCD monitor or the viewfinder. Also, closing the LCD monitor causes the viewfinder to display. See Information Displayed on the LCD Monitor (Viewfinder) and Menus for details (p. 49).
(The following are the screens that display when shooting in AUTO mode.)

**Shooting Mode** (The screens that display vary depending on the [Custom Display] settings (p. 65).)

- **LCD monitor**
  - (No Information)
  - (Information View)

- **Viewfinder**
  - (Information View)
  - (No Information)

When the LCD monitor is closed.

---

COPY

COPY
**Playback Mode or Rec. Review (Right After Shooting)**

- The LCD monitor will not switch to the detailed display or focus check display in magnified display (p. 158), or index playback mode (p. 159).

- If the surroundings are too bright (for example, when you are shooting outdoors) and images on the LCD monitor are not clear, use the viewfinder for shooting. Adjust the viewfinder focus with the diopter adjustment dial (p. 42) so the displayed information (p. 49) appears clearly. Adjustments of $-6.0$ to $+2.0 \text{ m}^{-1}$ (dpt) can be made.

- The brightness of the LCD monitor can be changed in [LCD Brightness] in the (Set up) menu (p. 59).
Night Display

When shooting at dusk or during the evening when the dark surroundings make it difficult to view the LCD monitor or the viewfinder, the camera’s “night view” option displays the subject brightly in the LCD monitor. This will allow you to compose a shot even in dark environments (this setting cannot be turned off).

* Although noise may appear and the movement of the subject shown on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder may appear somewhat jagged, there is no effect on the recorded image. The brightness of the image displayed in the LCD monitor or the viewfinder, and the brightness of the actual image recorded will be different.
Customizing Display Information

You can select which LCD monitor or viewfinder display modes are enabled when the DISP. button is pressed, as well as select which of the following information is displayed in each mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LCD/Viewfinder (ientes)</th>
<th>Select whether to enable or disable each of the display modes for the LCD (ientes) and the viewfinder (ientes). The display switches between each enabled display mode with each press of the DISP. button (p. 62). A display mode that is disabled will not appear when you press the DISP. button.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shooting Info</td>
<td>Displays shooting information (p. 49).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid Lines</td>
<td>Displays grid lines to divide the screen into 9 parts. Helps confirm the vertical and horizontal positioning of the subject (p. 49).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2 Guide</td>
<td>Helps confirm the print area for a 3:2 print*. Areas outside the printable area are grayed out (p. 49). * Images are still recorded at the standard aspect ratio of 4:3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histogram</td>
<td>Shooting Mode: P/Tv/Av/M Displays histogram (pp. 49, 52).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Select [Custom Display].

1. Press the MENU button.
2. In the menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Custom Display].
3. Press the button.
2 Select [LCD/Viewfinder].

1. Use the , , or button to select , , or .

- Sets LCD monitor display mode after the DISP. button is pressed.
- If you do not wish to change the display mode, press the FUNC./SET button to display ( / / / ).
- You cannot add to the current active LCD/Viewfinder icon.

3 Make settings.

1. Use the , , or button to select the items you wish to display.

2. Press the button to place a mark.

3. Press the MENU button.

- Even though items that are grayed out can be set, they may not display depending on the shooting mode.
- Display locations with no marks will not have any information displayed.

- If you press the shutter button halfway and return to the shooting screen from the custom display settings screen, the settings will not be saved.
- [3:2 Guide] is not available when the aspect ratio setting (p. 80) is set to 16:9.
Commonly Used Shooting Functions

You can also use the control dial to select shooting modes or FUNC. menu options. See p. 43.

Using the Optical Zoom

The zoom can be adjusted from 28 (W) – 560 (T) mm (aspect ratio 4:3) and 29 (W) – 580 (T) mm (aspect ratio 16:9) focal length in 35mm film equivalent terms.

1. Press the zoom lever toward } or .
   - } Telephoto: Zooms in on the subject.
   - } Wide Angle: Zooms out from the subject.
   - Zooming speed can be controlled with the zoom lever. Pressing the zoom lever fully left or right zooms quickly, while pressing lightly zooms slowly.
**Using the Digital Zoom/Digital Tele-Converter**

You can combine digital zoom with optical zoom when shooting. The available shooting characteristics and focal lengths (35mm film equivalent) are as follows. The options available for selection vary depending on the aspect ratio setting (p. 80).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection</th>
<th>Focal Length</th>
<th>Shooting Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standard (Aspect ratio 4:3)</td>
<td>Equivalent to 28 – 2240 mm</td>
<td>Enables shooting at zoom factors of up to 80x with digital and optical zoom combined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard (Aspect ratio 16:9)</td>
<td>Equivalent to 29 – 2320 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off (Aspect ratio 4:3)</td>
<td>Equivalent to 28 – 560 mm</td>
<td>Enables shooting without digital zoom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off (Aspect ratio 16:9)</td>
<td>Equivalent to 29 – 580 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3x (Aspect ratio 4:3)</td>
<td>Equivalent to 64.4 – 1288 mm</td>
<td>Digital zoom is fixed at the selected zoom factor, and the focal length shifts to maximum telephoto. This enables a faster shutter speed and less chance of camera shake than a shot taken at the same angle of view with [Standard] or [Off].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0x (Aspect ratio 16:9)</td>
<td>Equivalent to 58 – 1160 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**About the Safety Zoom**

Depending on the number of recording pixels set, you can shift from optical zoom to digital zoom without pausing up to a factor where the image quality does not deteriorate (Safety Zoom). Displays when reaching the maximum zoom factor without image deterioration. Pressing the zoom lever toward again allows you to zoom even further (not available during movie shooting.).

Depending on the number of recording pixels set, the Safety Zoom zone (factor) varies as follows (the number is the zoom factor at which zooming pauses).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recording pixels</th>
<th>Optical zoom</th>
<th>Digital zoom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>L</strong></td>
<td>20.0x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong></td>
<td>20.0x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong></td>
<td>28.0x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>46.0x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>80.0x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LW</strong></td>
<td>20.0x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SW</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>40.0x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The color of the zoom bar:
- **White ( )** Zone without deterioration
- **Yellow ( )** Zone with deterioration
- **Blue ( )**

- The digital zoom cannot be used in **RAW** mode.
- The digital zoom and digital teleconverter cannot be used when shooting movies in **RAW** mode.
Shooting with the Digital Zoom

1. **Select [Digital Zoom].**
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select [Digital Zoom].

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the or button to select [Standard].
   2. Press the MENU button.

3. **Press the zoom lever toward and shoot.**
   - The combined digital and optical zoom factor will display in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).
   - The image may appear coarse depending upon the selected recording pixels. The zoom factor appears in blue.
   - Press the zoom lever toward to zoom out.

Focus range (approx.)

- Optical zoom (White)
- Digital zoom (Yellow/Blue)
- Combined optical and digital zoom

Approximately 2 seconds later
Shooting with the Digital Tele-Converter

The digital tele-converter feature uses digital zoom to achieve the effects of a tele-converter (a lens used in telephoto shooting).

1. **Select [Digital Zoom].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select [Digital Zoom].

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the or button to select an option
      - The following options are available depending on the aspect ratio setting.
        - 4:3: [2.3x]
        - 16:9: [2.0x]
   2. Press the **MENU** button.

3. **Adjust the zoom level with the zoom lever and shoot.**
   - and the zoom factor appear on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).
   - When a still image is shot, the image may appear coarse depending upon the selected recording pixels (the icon and the zoom factor appear in blue). However, images will not be coarse when shooting movies, even when and the zoom factor appear in blue.
Using the Flash

1. **Raise the flash manually.**

2. **Press the button.**
   1. Use the or button to change the flash mode.

   - : [Auto]
   - : [On]

   • You can configure detailed settings for the flash when you press the MENU button while this screen is displayed (p. 112).

3. **When you are not using the flash, lower the flash until it closes.**
   • (flash off) appears in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).

You are recommended to shoot with the camera attached to a tripod or other device if the camera shake warning icon appears.

- The time required for flash recharging will change depending on usage conditions and remaining battery power.
- A blinking red in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) indicates insufficient light level. In this case, raise the flash before shooting. However, when shooting with the Tv, Av or M mode there is no indication.
**Shooting Close-ups (Macro/Super Macro)**

Use this mode to shoot close-ups of flowers or small items. Super Macro mode allows even closer shooting of the subject than Macro mode, magnifying the subject further. In addition, the background can be shot with different effects than when shooting in Macro mode.

1. **Press the button.**
   - Press and hold this button for more than one second for Super Macro mode (appears on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder).
   - When using the zoom in macro mode, a yellow bar appears below the zoom bar to indicate the range in which the camera cannot focus in macro mode to shoot the subject. When the zoom level is in the yellow area, the shooting distance becomes that of normal mode, and appears gray.
     The zoom bar disappears after approx. 2 seconds.
   - You cannot use the zoom in Super Macro mode (the zoom level is fixed at maximum wide angle).

**To Cancel the Macro Mode:**
Press the button and use the or button to display (Normal).

You can reduce the AF frame size when you want to focus on a specific portion of the subject. (p. 123)
### Focusing distance and image area when shooting as close to the subject as possible

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zoom level</th>
<th>Focusing distance</th>
<th>When shooting as close to the subject as possible</th>
<th>Image area</th>
<th>Distance between end of lens and subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum wide angle</td>
<td>10 – 50 cm</td>
<td>155 × 113 mm (3.9 in. – 1.6 ft.)</td>
<td>10 cm (3.9 in.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3.9 in. – 1.6 ft.)</td>
<td></td>
<td>163 × 88 mm (6.4 × 3.5 in.) (Aspect ratio 4:3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum wide angle (fixed)*</td>
<td>0 – 10 cm</td>
<td>28 × 20 mm (0 – 3.9 in.) (Aspect ratio 4:3)</td>
<td>0 cm (0 in.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(0 – 3.9 in.)</td>
<td></td>
<td>30 × 15 mm (1.2 × 0.59 in.) (Aspect ratio 16:9)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* You cannot use the zoom.

- Check the range of the built-in flash when using it in Macro mode on p. 283. Also using the flash in Macro mode may cause image edges to darken.
- Be careful to avoid damaging the lens when shooting in Super Macro mode.
### Using the Self-Timer

You can set the time delay and the number of shots you wish to take in advance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10 sec. Self-Timer</td>
<td>Shoots 10 seconds after you press the shutter button. • 2 seconds before the shutter releases, the self-timer lamp and sound speed up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 sec. Self-Timer</td>
<td>Shoots 2 seconds after you press the shutter button. • The self-timer sound beeps quickly when you press the shutter button and the shutter releases 2 seconds later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Timer</td>
<td>You can change the delay time (0 – 10, 15, 20, 30 sec.) and number of shots (1 – 10). • When a delay time of over 2 seconds is set for the [Delay] option, the self-timer sound beeps quickly 2 seconds before the shutter releases. If multiple shots have been specified for the [Shots] option, the sound will play for the first shot only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Face Self-Timer</td>
<td>When you press the shutter button, the camera shoots 2 seconds after a new face is detected within the composition. You can change the number of shots (1 – 10). • The self-timer sound beeps quickly and the lamp blinks when a new face is detected. The shutter releases 2 seconds later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless Delay</td>
<td>Allows you to shoot using a wireless controller (p. 262). The delay time (0, 2, 10 sec.) can also be changed for remote control shooting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Select [Drive Settings].
1. Press the MENU button.
2. In the menu, use the or button to select [Drive Settings].
3. Press the button.

Make settings.
1. Use the or button to select [Self-Timer].
2. Use the or button to set.
3. Press the button.
4. Press the MENU button.

Press the button.
1. Use the or button to select the self-timer mode.

- Pressing the MENU button while this screen is displayed will display the [Drive Settings] screen in Step 2.

Shoot.
- When you press the shutter button fully, the self-timer lamp will blink.*

* When [Red-Eye Lamp] is set to [On] in [Flash Control] (p. 112), the lamp will light 2 seconds before the flash fires.

To Cancel the Self-Timer:
Follow Step 3 to select □.
Changing the Delay Time and Number of Shots ( )

1. **Select [Drive Settings].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the **menu**, use the **or** button to select [Drive Settings].
   3. Press the **button.**

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the **or** button to select [Self-Timer], and the **or** button to select **.
   2. Use the **or** button to select [Delay] or [Shots] and the **or** button to change the settings.
   3. Press the **button.
   4. Press the **MENU** button.

If the [Shots] option is set to 2 or more shots, the following occurs.
- The exposure and white balance are locked at the settings selected for the first shot.
- If the flash is used, the interval between shots lengthens.
- The interval between shots may lengthen when the built-in memory of the camera fills.
- Shooting will automatically cease if the memory card becomes full.
1 **Select**

1. Press the button.
2. Use the or button to select .

2 **Set the number of shots.**

1. Press the button.
2. In the menu, use the or button to select [Drive Settings].
3. Press the button.
4. Use the or button to select [FaceSelf-Timer].
5. Use the or button to set a value.
6. Press the button.
7. Press the button.

- You can set the number of shots by pressing the button while the screen in Step 1 is displayed.

3 **Compose the image and press the shutter button halfway.**

- A green frame appears around the face of the main subject, while white frames appear around the other faces.
4 Press the shutter button fully to shoot.
   • The camera prepares to shoot, and the “Look straight at camera to start count down” message appears.
   • The self-timer lamp will blink and self-timer sound will beep.

5 Have the other subject enter the composition and face the camera.
   • When the new face is detected, the blinking of the self-timer lamp and the self-timer sound speed up, and the shutter releases approx. 2 seconds later.
   • When the number of shots is set to 2 or more, pictures will continue to be taken at approximately 1-second intervals.
   • If the subject enters the composition but the camera does not detect the face, the shutter will release approx. 30 seconds later.

See Face Detect Feature (p. 121) for details on face detection.
You can change the aspect ratio for images while shooting. When you select the 16:9 aspect ratio, you can shoot images in a size that is suited for playback on a high-definition TV or printing on wide size paper.

1. **Press the  (Aspect Ratio) button.**
   - The aspect ratio switches between 4:3 and 16:9 with each press of the button.
   - See *Changing the Recording Pixels (Still Images)* (p. 81) when shooting still images.
   - See *Changing Movie Recording Pixels* (p. 93) when shooting movies.

- The aspect ratio is fixed at 4:3 in  mode.
- You cannot change the aspect ratio while displaying menus or the MF indicator (p. 129).
Changing the Recording Pixels (Still Images)

The recording pixels available for selection vary depending on the aspect ratio setting.

1. **Set the aspect ratio.**
   - *Changing the Aspect Ratio* (p. 80)

2. **Select the recording pixels.**
   1. Press the FUNC. button.
   2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select L and the ← or → button to change the recording pixels.
Approximate Values for Recording Pixels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aspect Ratio</th>
<th>Recording Pixels</th>
<th>Purpose*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Large</td>
<td>10M 3648 × 2736</td>
<td>High Printing to about A2 size (Approx. 420 × 594 mm (16.5 × 23.4 in.))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium 1</td>
<td>6M 2816 × 2112</td>
<td>Printing to about A3 size (Approx. 297 × 420 mm (11.7 × 16.5 in.))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium 2</td>
<td>4M 2272 × 1704</td>
<td>Printing to about A4 size (Approx. 210 × 297 mm (8.3 × 11.7 in.)) Printing to about Letter size prints 216 × 279 mm (8.5 × 11 in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium 3</td>
<td>2M 1600 × 1200</td>
<td>Printing postcard-size prints 148 × 100 mm (6 × 4 in.) Printing L-size prints 119 × 89 mm (4.7 × 3.5 in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small</td>
<td>0.3M 640 × 480</td>
<td>Sending images as e-mail attachments or shooting more images</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAW</td>
<td>10M 3648 × 2736</td>
<td>p. 295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Widescreen</td>
<td>8M 3840 × 2160</td>
<td>Printing wide size prints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Widescreen</td>
<td>2M 1920 × 1080</td>
<td>Displaying images on a high-definition TV or similar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*: Approximate recording pixel numbers are shown. M is short for megapixels. * Paper sizes vary according to region.

See Memory Cards, Estimated Capacities and Image Data Sizes (Estimated) (p. 287).
Changing the Compression (Still Images)

Available Shooting Modes  p. 300

Select a compression setting.
1. Press the FUNC button.
2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select and the ← or → button to change the option.
3. Press the FUNC button.

Approximate Values for Compression Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compression</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superfine</td>
<td>Shoot higher quality images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine</td>
<td>Shoot normal quality images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Shoot more images.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Memory Cards, Estimated Capacities and Image Data Sizes (Estimated) (p. 287).
The lens-shift type image stabilizer function allows you to minimize the camera shake effect (blurred images) when you shoot distant subjects that have been magnified or when you shoot in dark conditions without a flash.

### Setting the Image Stabilizer Function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Display on the LCD monitor*</th>
<th>Summary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>![Continuous icon]</td>
<td>You can check the effect of the IS mode on image blur on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) since the IS mode runs continually. This makes it easier to compose images and focus on subjects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoot Only</td>
<td>![Shoot Only icon]</td>
<td>Shoot Only IS mode is only activated when the shutter button is pressed. When set to [Continuous], some blurring may occur depending on the subjects. In Shoot Only mode, subjects can be taken without concern for any unnatural movement that may appear on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panning</td>
<td>![Panning icon]</td>
<td>This option only stabilizes the effect of up and down camera motions on the image. This option is recommended for shooting objects moving horizontally.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The same icons are displayed in the viewfinder.

1. **Select [IS Mode].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the **menu**, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [IS Mode].
2 Make settings.

1. Use the ← or → button to select the image stabilizer settings.
2. Press the MENU button.

- Camera shake may not be fully corrected when shooting with slow shutter speeds. Use the Auto ISO Shift (p. 87), or fix the camera to a tripod. When you shoot still images with the camera attached to a tripod, we recommend you set [IS Mode] to [Off]. When you shoot movies with the camera attached to a tripod, we recommend you set [IS Mode] to [Continuous].
- If camera shake is too strong, it may not be fully corrected.
- Hold the camera horizontally while [Panning] (stabilization does not work when the camera is held vertically).
- If you shoot a movie after setting [IS Mode] to [Shoot Only] or [Panning], the setting will change to [Continuous].
Adjusting the ISO Speed

Raise the ISO speed to use a fast shutter speed when you wish to reduce the effects of camera shake or avoid blurry subjects, or to turn the flash off when shooting in a dark area.

1. Select an ISO Speed.

1. Press the ISO button, and use the ← or → button to change the setting.

- When you select ISO (Auto) or ISO (High ISO Auto), the camera sets the optimal ISO speed for the light level when shooting. As the ISO speed will automatically be raised in dark places, shutter speed will increase, reducing camera shake and subject blurring.
- Select ISO to put priority on image quality.
- When you select ISO, the camera also detects motion and sets the optimal ISO speed. As the shutter speed becomes even faster*, camera shake and blurred photos caused by subject movement will be reduced even more than when shooting the same scene in ISO AUTO.

* Noise may increase in the captured image compared to ISO AUTO.

- You can set the ISO speed to ISO (p. 100).
- The camera automatically applies noise reduction processing when you shoot at a high ISO speed.
- If the camera is set at ISO or ISO, the ISO speed automatically set by the camera will be displayed when pressing the shutter button halfway or in playback information.
Reducing Camera Shake When Shooting (Auto ISO Shift)

Available Shooting Modes  p. 300

When the camera shake warning icon ((LED) appears during shooting, this function allows you to increase ISO speed and to shoot at a shutter speed which minimizes the effects of camera shake by pressing the button.

- In ISO, ISO or ISO mode, it will not function when the flash fires.
- Depending on shooting conditions, the camera shake warning icon (LED) may continue to display even if the ISO speed is increased.

1. Select [Auto ISO Shift].
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select [Auto ISO Shift].

2. Make settings.
   1. Use the or button to select [On].
   2. Press the MENU button.
3 Press the shutter button halfway.
   • When  is displayed, the button lights in blue.

4 Press and hold the shutter button halfway, then press the button.
   • The ISO speed after adjustment is displayed.
   • While pressing the shutter button halfway, pressing the button again will return the ISO speed to its original condition.
   • When the AE lock (p. 133) is activated after the ISO speed is raised, the ISO speed will not return to its original setting even if you release the shutter button (at this time, the button turns off).

5 Press the shutter button fully to shoot.
Shooting Using the Mode Dial

Mode Dial

The camera automatically selects settings.

**AUTO**: Auto (p. 17)

**Image Zone**

When a shooting mode appropriate for the shooting conditions is selected, the camera automatically adjusts settings for optimal shooting (p. 97).

- **Portraits**: Portrait
- **Landscape**
- **Night Snapshot**: Night Snapshot
- **Sports**: Sports
- **Special Scene**
  - **Night Scene**: Night Scene
  - **Sunset**: Sunset
  - **Snow**: Snow
  - **Fireworks**: Fireworks
  - **Aquarium**: Aquarium
  - **Color Accent**: Color Accent
  - **Color Swap**: Color Swap
- **Stitch Assist** (p. 108)
- **Movie** (pp. 24, 90)

**Creative Zone**

You can freely select camera settings such as the shutter speed and aperture value to suit your shooting purposes.

- **Program AE** (p. 101)
- **Setting the Shutter Speed** (p. 102)
- **Setting the Aperture** (p. 104)
- **Manually Setting the Shutter Speed and Aperture** (p. 106)
- **Saving Custom Settings** (p. 153)
Movie Shooting

Available Shooting Modes  p. 300

Regardless of the mode dial position, you can shoot movies* by just pressing the Movie button, until the memory card is full. You can also shoot movies while using effects such as Color Accent, Color Swap, and My Colors.

When the aspect ratio is set to 4:3, you can select the number recording pixels (p. 93).

When the aspect ratio is set to 16:9 (p. 80), you can shoot movies in full high-definition.

Sound is recorded in stereo.

In modes other than mode, some of the settings previously set in menus such as the FUNC. and Rec. menus may be changed to those of the movie recording mode.

* Even if the file size has not reached 4 GB in the aspect ratio 4:3 mode, the recording is stopped when the recording time reaches one hour (p. 288). Depending on memory card capacity, data write speed and subjects, recording may stop before the file size reaches 4 GB or the recording time reaches one hour.

About Full High-Definition Movies

The CMOS image sensor allows the camera to process full high-definition movies that are recorded in 1920 × 1080 pixels*, producing movies that capture the smallest of details. We recommend using an SD memory card with a Class 6 speed rating or higher.

In addition, by using the HDMI Cable HTC-100 (sold separately), you can play back the movies on a high-definition TV (p. 233).

* Recorded data type is MOV.
1 **Press the Movie button to shoot.**

- Pressing the Movie button starts recording video and sound simultaneously.
- During shooting, the recording time and [●Rec] appear on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).
- The camera continues to focus while shooting (when the aspect ratio is set to 4:3 and a face is detected, the camera will focus on that face).
- Pressing the Movie button fully again stops recording. Recording will stop automatically under the following circumstances.
  - When the maximum recording time or maximum recording capacity is reached.
  - When the built-in memory or memory card becomes full.
- When shooting with the Color Accent or the Color Swap mode, be sure to set them beforehand (p. 147).

⚠️ **You are recommended to use a memory card that has been formatted in this camera to shoot movies (pp. 16, 223).**

- Be careful of the following while recording.
  - Do not touch the microphone (p. 40).
  - If you press a button, the sound of the button being pressed will also be recorded.
  - The camera will automatically adjust the exposure and white balance to suit the shooting conditions during recording. The sounds made by the camera while automatically adjusting the exposure may also be recorded.
You can perform the following operations when shooting a movie (you can also set them before shooting when the mode dial is set to "Movie Mode").

- **AF lock**: If you press the MF button, auto focus will be fixed at the current state. The MF icon and MF indicator appear on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder), and you can confirm the distance between the subject and lens. You can cancel by pressing the MF button again.

- **Manual focus (p. 129)**

- **AE lock and exposure shift**: this is effective on ski slopes and the beach when the contrast is too strong between the subject and background or where there are both light and dark areas in the scene and it is desirable to adjust the exposure.
  1. Press the AE lock button.
     The exposure will lock (AE lock) and the exposure shift bar will appear in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).
  2. Use the control dial to adjust the exposure.
     Press the AE lock button again to release the setting. Also, the setting will be canceled if you press the MENU button or change the white balance, My Colors or shooting mode settings.

- **When movie recording is stopped in any mode dial position except "Movie Mode", the still image settings return to the settings before movie shooting began. AE lock (p. 133) and exposure shift are canceled.**
### Changing Movie Recording Pixels (Aspect Ratio 4:3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recording Pixels</th>
<th>Frame Rates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>640 × 480</td>
<td>30 frames/sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320 × 240</td>
<td>30 frames/sec.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1. Select the recording pixels.

1. Press the **FUNC** button.
2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select 640 and the ← or → button to change the option.
3. Press the **FUNC** button.

The number of recording pixels and frame rate for 120 mode are fixed at 1920 × 1080 pixels and 30 frames/sec. respectively.

- See *Memory Cards, Estimated Capacities and Image Data Sizes (Estimated)* (p. 287).
- Frame rates indicate the number of frames recorded or played back each second.
Shooting Still Images while Shooting a Movie

You can shoot a high quality still image* while shooting a movie.
* The recording pixels and compression will be the same as those for still images of the selected aspect ratio. However, when shooting in RAW mode, the image will be recorded in \( \text{i} \) (Large, Fine).

1 While shooting a movie, press the shutter button halfway to focus.
   • Press the shutter halfway so the camera can focus and set exposure for the still image. The electronic sound does not play. During this process, movie shooting continues.

2 Press the shutter button all the way to shoot the image.
   • When a still image is shot, the display on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) will disappear momentarily and then return to the movie display. Because the shutter sound of the still image being taken is also recorded, the sound of that moment in the movie will cut off.

⚠️ The flash will not fire.
⚠️ The ISO speed will be fixed to [Auto].
   • Continuous shooting of still images is not available.
   • Movie shooting may stop when shooting a still image if there is insufficient internal memory available.
   • The following icons appear if the recording speed of the storage media is too slow or if there is insufficient internal memory available, in which case a still image cannot be shot.
     ☢️ : While this is blinking, writing is in progress. Shooting is again possible when it stops blinking and stays lit.
     📡 : Internal memory is full, so shooting is disabled.
Setting the Recording Functions

Available Shooting Modes ➞ p. 300

The microphone level (sound recording level) for movie, sound memos (p. 196) and sound recorder (p. 197), and Wind Filter (p. 197) can be set.

1. **Select [Audio].**
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. Use the ← or → button to select the ⌘ menu.
   3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Audio].
   4. Press the FUNC. button.

2. **Set the microphone level.**
   1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Mic Level].
   2. Use the ← or → button to select [Auto] or [Manual].

   - When in [Manual] mode, press the ↓ button, then set the sound recording level (recording volume) with the ← or → button. 🗝 displays in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).
3 **Set the wind filter.**

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Wind Filter].
2. Use the ← or → button to select [On] or [Off].
3. Press the **MENU** button.

- Recommended to set to [On] when the wind is strong.
- When set to [On], ♯ displays in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).

- When [Auto] is set, recording volume is automatically adjusted to reduce sound distortion.
- Wind Filter suppresses noise when the wind is strong. However, unnatural sound will result when used to record in locations with no wind.
**Shooting Modes for Specific Scenes**

When a shooting mode appropriate for the shooting conditions is selected, the camera automatically adjusts settings for optimal shooting.

**Available Shooting Modes** p. 300

1. Set the mode dial to , , , or SCN (Special Scene).

**SCN mode**

1. Use the control dial to select the scene mode.

**Portrait**

Produces a soft effect when photographing people.

**Landscape**

Optimized for shooting landscape scenes which contain both near and far subjects.
**Night Snapshot**
Allows you to take snapshots of people against twilight or night backgrounds by reducing the effects of camera shake when firmly holding the camera, even without using a tripod.

**Sports**
Shoots continuous images with autofocus. Well suited for shooting moving subjects.

**Night Scene**
Allows you to capture people against the backdrop of an evening sky or night scene. The flash is directed at the person and the shutter speed is slow, so both the person and the background can be beautifully shot. Be sure to raise the flash before shooting.

**Indoor**
Prevents camera shake and maintains the subject's true color when shooting under fluorescent or tungsten lighting.

**Sunset**
Allows you to shoot sunsets in vivid colors.

**Foliage**
Shoots trees and leaves - such as new growth, autumn leaves or blossoms - in vivid colors.
Shooting Using the Mode Dial

Snow
Shoots without a blue tinge and without making people appear dark against a snowy background.

Beach
Shoots without making people appear dark near water or sand where reflected sunlight is strong.

Fireworks
Captures fireworks in the sky sharply and at optimal exposure.

Long Shutter
By setting the shutter speed to between 1 and 15 seconds, you can shoot with long exposure. Press the button, turn the control dial to set the shutter speed, and press the button again. To prevent camera shake, stabilize the camera using a tripod, for example. In addition, using flash may result in overexposed images. When shooting in such cases, set the flash to .

Aquarium
Selects the optimal ISO speed and white balance to capture fish and other items in an indoor aquarium.
ISO 3200
Selects the highest possible ISO speed (3200, twice the ISO 1600 speed) and increases the shutter speed to minimize blurring of moving subjects and camera shake, even in low light conditions. Recording pixels are fixed at ( in the aspect ratio 16:9 mode).

Color Accent
Use this option to have only the color specified in the screen remain and to transform all others to black and white (p. 147).

Color Swap
Use this option to transform a color specified in the screen into another (p. 149).

- The shutter speed is slow in or mode. Always use a tripod to avoid camera shake.
- In , , , or mode, the ISO speed may increase and cause noise in the image depending on the scene being shot.
- With , image noise may be prominent.
- In mode, the brightness for an image displayed in the LCD monitor may differ from the brightness that is actually recorded. Be sure to check whether the image was taken in the brightness you intended.
- When shooting with a shutter speed slower than 1.3 seconds in mode, you must wait a while before you can shoot the next picture due to noise reduction processing performed after shooting.
The camera automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to match the brightness of the scene. You can set the ISO speed, exposure compensation and white balance.

1. **Set the mode dial to P.**

2. **Shoot.**

- When a correct exposure cannot be obtained, the shutter speed and aperture values are shown in red on the LCD monitor when the button is pressed halfway. Use the following shooting methods to obtain the correct exposure and make them show in white.
  - Use the flash (p. 72)
  - Adjust the ISO Speed (p. 86)
  - Use the Auto ISO Shift (p. 87)
  - Change the metering method (p. 139)

- You can change the combinations of shutter speeds and aperture values without altering the exposure (p. 134).
When you set the shutter speed, the camera automatically selects an aperture value to match the brightness of the subject. Faster shutter speeds allow you to catch an instantaneous image of a moving subject, while slower speeds create a flowing effect and allow you to shoot without a flash in dark areas.

1. Set the mode dial to **Tv**.

2. Configure the shutter speed.
   1. Use the control dial to change the shutter speed.
      - When using the control dial, the **Tv** bar will be displayed and the shutter speed can be changed.

3. Shoot.
   - If the aperture value is shown in red, the image is underexposed (insufficient light) or overexposed (too much light). Use the control dial to adjust the shutter speed until the aperture value shows in white (you can also use Safety Shift (p. 103)).

The noise in the recorded image increases at slow shutter speeds. This camera, however, applies special processing to images shot at shutter speeds slower than 1.3 seconds to eliminate the noise, thereby producing high-quality images. (However, a certain amount of processing time may be required before the next image can be shot.)
The shutter speed, zoom and aperture value have the following relationship.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum Wide Angle</th>
<th>Aperture Value</th>
<th>Shutter Speed (seconds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>f/2.8 – 3.2</td>
<td>1 – 1/1600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f/3.5</td>
<td>1 – 1/2000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f/4.0 – 7.1</td>
<td>1 – 1/2500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f/8.0</td>
<td>1 – 1/3200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum Telephoto</th>
<th>Aperture Value</th>
<th>Shutter Speed (seconds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>f/5.7 – 6.3</td>
<td>1 – 1/1600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f/7.1</td>
<td>1 – 1/2000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f/8.0</td>
<td>1 – 1/2500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fastest shutter speed for flash synchronization is 1/500 second*. Therefore, even if the shutter speed is preset to a speed higher than 1/500 second, the camera automatically resets the shutter speed to 1/500 second during shooting.

* When using an external flash, see pp. 271, 272.

**Shutter Speed Display**

- The following shutter speeds can be set. 1/160 indicates 1/160 second. Also, 0"3 indicates 0.3 second and 2" indicates 2 seconds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shutter Speeds</th>
<th>Aperture Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1&quot;</td>
<td>0&quot;8 0&quot;6 0&quot;5 0&quot;4 0&quot;3 1/4 1/5 1/6 1/8 1/10 1/13 1/15 1/20 1/25 1/30 1/40 1/50 1/60 1/80 1/100 1/125 1/160 1/200 1/250 1/320 1/400 1/500 1/640 1/800 1/1000 1/1250 1/1600 1/2000 1/2500 1/3200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You can set the shutter speed to between 1 and 15 seconds in Mode (p. 99).
- You can change the combinations of shutter speeds and aperture values without altering the exposure (p. 134).

**Safety Shift**

With **Tv** and **Av** modes, if [Safety Shift] is turned [On] (p. 54) in the menu, the shutter speed or aperture value is automatically adjusted for the correct exposure when it cannot be otherwise obtained. Safety Shift is disabled when the flash is enabled.
The aperture adjusts the amount of light entering through the lens. When you set the aperture value, the camera automatically selects a shutter speed to match the brightness. Selecting a lower aperture value (opening the aperture) allows you to blur the background and create a beautiful portrait. A higher aperture value (closing the aperture) brings the entire range from foreground to background into focus. The larger the aperture value, the greater the range of the image brought into clear focus.

1. Set the mode dial to **Av**.

2. Configure the aperture setting.  
   1. Use the control dial to change the aperture value.
   
      - When using the control dial, the **Av** bar will be displayed and the aperture value can be changed.

3. Shoot.  
   - If the shutter speed is shown in red when the shutter button is pressed halfway, the image is underexposed (insufficient light) or overexposed (too much light). Use the control dial to adjust the aperture value until the shutter speed shows in white (you can also use Safety Shift (p. 103)).

Some aperture values may not be available with certain zoom positions (p. 103).
The maximum shutter speed with synchronized flash is 1/500 second*. Therefore, even if an aperture value is preset, the aperture value may automatically be reset to match the synchronized flash speed.

* When using an external flash, see pp. 271, 272.

**Aperture Value Display**

- The larger the aperture value, the smaller the lens opening, allowing less light to enter the camera.

  F2.8 F3.2 F3.5 F4.0 F4.5 F5.0 F5.6 F5.7 F6.3 F7.1 F8.0

- You can change the combinations of aperture values and shutter speeds without altering the exposure (p. 134).
Manually Setting the Shutter Speed and Aperture

You can manually set the shutter speed and aperture to shoot images.

1. Set the mode dial to M.

2. Configure the shutter speed and aperture setting.
   1. Press the button to select the shutter speed or aperture value.
   2. Use the control dial to change the shutter speed or aperture value.

   • When using the control dial, the *Tv* bar or *Av* bar will be displayed and the value can be changed.
Shooting Using the Mode Dial

3 Shoot.

- The current exposure level appears on the lower side of the exposure level indicator, while the correct exposure level appears in the center on the left side of the indicator (if the difference is more than ±2 stops, the current exposure level appears in red on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder).

- When you press the shutter button halfway, the difference between the correct exposure* and the selected exposure appears on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder). If the difference is more than ±2 stops, “–2” or “+2” appears in red.

* The correct exposure is calculated by measuring the brightness according to the selected metering method.

- When you press the 
  button, the shutter speed or aperture value will automatically shift to obtain the correct exposure (except when the MF icon is selected). When the shutter speed is selected, the aperture value will change. When the aperture is selected, the shutter speed will change.

- If the zoom is adjusted after these values are set, the aperture value or the shutter speed may change in accordance with the zoom position (p. 103).

- The brightness of the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) matches the selected shutter speed and aperture value. When you select a fast shutter speed or shoot a subject in a dark place, set the flash to (Flash on) or use an externally mounted flash, the image will always be bright.
Shooting Panoramic Images (Stitch Assist)

Stitch Assist can be used to shoot overlapping images that can later be merged (stitched) to create one panoramic image on a computer.

1. Set the mode dial to  

2. Select the shooting direction.
   1. Use the control dial to select a shooting direction.

   You can select from the following five shooting directions.
   - → Left to right horizontally
   - ← Right to left horizontally
   - ↑ Bottom to top vertically
   - ↓ Top to bottom vertically
   - Clockwise starting at the top left shooting 4 images.
3 Shoot the first frame of the sequence.
   • The exposure and white balance are set and locked with the first image.

4 Compose the second image so that it overlaps a portion of the first and shoot.
   • You can press the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to return to the previously recorded image to retake the shot. (When shooting clockwise, you can retake the entire image.)
   • Minor discrepancies in the overlapping portions can be corrected when the images are stitched together.

5 Repeat the procedure for additional images.
   • A sequence may contain up to 26 images (except when shooting clockwise).

6 Press the FUNC. button after the last shot.

! You cannot display the images on a TV when shooting in Stitch Assist mode.
• The settings for the first image are applied to the second image onward.
• Images will be taken in a fixed 4:3 aspect ratio regardless of the aspect ratio setting.

Use PhotoStitch, a supplied software program, to merge the images on a computer.
Various Shooting Methods

You can also use the control dial to select shooting modes or FUNC. menu options. See p. 43.

Continuous Shooting

The camera shoots continuously while the shutter button is held down.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Continuous Shooting</th>
<th>Focus while shooting</th>
<th>Display on the LCD monitor*1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Continuous Approx. 4.0 images/sec.</td>
<td>You can shoot continuously at a short shooting interval.</td>
<td>Fixed*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous Shooting AF Approx. 1.1 images/sec.</td>
<td>The camera will continue to record successive images and focus while the shutter button is held down (except in Manual Focus mode).</td>
<td>Auto focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous Shooting LV (Live View) Approx. 1.2 images/sec.</td>
<td>You can shoot continuously with a manually set focus position while confirming the subject.</td>
<td>Fixed*2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 The same icons are displayed in the viewfinder.
*2 The focus position of first image is fixed.

1. Press the button.  

1. Use the or button to select , or .
Shoot.

- The camera will continue to record successive images while the shutter button is held down. Recording will cease when the shutter button is released.

To Cancel Continuous Shooting:
Follow Step 1 to display 📷.

- When in 📷, 📷 will be the default setting. 📷 cannot be set.
- In 📷 and Manual Focus modes, 📷 will not display (ICIENT can be selected).
- AF frame will be set to [Center] in 📷 mode (p. 120).
- Rec. Review (p. 18) will not be displayed in 📷 and 📷 modes.
- Cannot be set while in the Focus Bracketing or AEB mode.

- The interval between shots lengthens when the built-in memory of the camera fills.
- If the built-in flash is used, the interval between shots lengthens because the flash must charge.
### Built-in Flash Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flash Mode</td>
<td>When set to [Manual], you can control the flash output in the <em>Tv</em> or <em>Av</em> shooting mode.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Exp. Comp</td>
<td>Flash exposure compensation can be adjusted in the range of –2 to +2 stops in 1/3-stop increments. You can combine the flash exposure compensation with the camera’s exposure compensation function for balanced exposure of the background when shooting with a flash.</td>
<td>In <em>Tv</em> or <em>Av</em> shooting mode, set [Flash Mode] to [Auto] in advance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Output</td>
<td>The flash output can be controlled in three steps, up to full, when shooting.</td>
<td>In <em>Tv</em> or <em>Av</em> shooting mode, set [Flash Mode] to [Manual].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter Sync.</td>
<td>You can switch the timing at which the flash fires.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **1st-curtain**
  - The flash fires right after the shutter opens, regardless of the shutter speed. Usually, the 1st-curtain is used when shooting.

- **2nd-curtain**
  - The flash fires right before the shutter closes. Compared with the 1st-curtain, the flash fires later and allows you to shoot images in which, for example, a car’s taillights seem to trail off behind.
### Various Shooting Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Summary</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slow Synchro</td>
<td>The flash timing is adjusted to slow shutter speeds. This reduces the chance that only the background will appear dark when a night scene or an interior shot is taken.</td>
<td>Using Slow Synchro increases the chances for camera shake. Use of a tripod is recommended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Corr.</td>
<td>Automatically searches for and corrects red eyes in the image when the flash fires.</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Lamp</td>
<td>This feature reduces the effect of light reflecting back from the eyes and making them appear red.</td>
<td>The red-eye reduction lamp lights green before the flash fires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety FE</td>
<td>The camera automatically changes the shutter speed or aperture value when the flash fires to avoid overexposing and blowing out the highlights in the scene.</td>
<td>In <strong>Tv</strong> or <strong>Av</strong> shooting mode, set [Flash Mode] to [Auto] in advance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### About Red-Eye Correction

- When [Red-Eye Corr.] is set to [On], only the corrected image is recorded to the memory card.
- If the area around the eyes is red, for example from using red eye shadow, that area may also be corrected. If this happens, set [Red-Eye Corr.] to [Off].
- Red eyes may not be automatically detected or may not be fully corrected on some images. In either case, you can correct images with [Red-Eye Correction] in the Play menu (p. 185).
- The digital zoom cannot be used in **RAW** mode.
Displaying and Setting [Flash Control]

1 Select [Flash Control].
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Flash Control].
   3. Press the button.

   • [Flash Control] can also be displayed by the following methods.
     - Press the button for more than one second.
     - When changing the flash mode, press the MENU button (p. 72).

2 Make settings.
   1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select the option.
   2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to make the setting.
   3. Press the MENU button twice.

Example in P mode

You can also set [Flash Exp. Comp] and [Flash Output] in the FUNC. menu (p. 53).
Checking the Focus and People’s Expressions

You can zoom the display of the AF frame to check focus when shooting or right after taking a shot.

Zooming the AF Frame and Shooting

The AF frame area can be zoomed to check focus while shooting. When you want to capture people’s expressions, set [AF Frame] to [Face Detect]. When you want to check the focus while shooting in Macro mode, set [AF Frame] to [Center] or [FlexiZone].

1. Select [AF-Point Zoom].
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select [AF-Point Zoom].

2. Make settings.
   1. Use the or button to select [On].
   2. Press the MENU button.
3 **Press the shutter button halfway.**

- Pressing the shutter button halfway zooms a section of the display according to the following AF Frame mode settings (p. 120).
  
  - **[Face Detect]**: The face detected as the main subject will appear zoomed.
  - **[Center]**: The center of the image will appear zoomed in the LCD monitor.
  - **[FlexiZone]**: The area within the AF frame will appear zoomed.

4 **Press the shutter button fully to shoot.**

⚠️ The AF frame cannot be zoomed under the following circumstances:

- When **[AF Frame]** is set to **[Face Detect]** and a face is not detected, or when the face is extremely large in relation to the overall composition.
- When the camera cannot focus.
- When the digital zoom is in use.
- When a TV is being used as the display.
- When **[Servo AF]** (p. 126) is set to **[On]**.
Checking Focus Right After Shooting (Focus Check)

Allows you to check the focus of an image taken. It is also easy to check people's expressions and look for closed eyes when shooting because a frame the size of the face displays when Face Select and Track (p. 120) or AF frame mode is set to [Face Detect] (p. 120). You are recommended to set [Review] to [Hold] in the menu in advance.

1 Select [Review Info].
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select [Review Info].

2 Make settings.
   1. Use the or button to select [Focus Check].
   2. Press the MENU button.
3 Shoot.

• The recorded image will be displayed.

• Frames are displayed as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame color</th>
<th>Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>Displays the area of the image shown at the bottom right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>Indicates the AF frames or the positions of faces that were focused when shooting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• The orange frame can be shown at a different magnification, moved or switched to a different frame (p. 161).

To Cancel the Focus Check:
Press the shutter button halfway.

- Pressing the button while the image is displayed will erase the image (p. 20).
- You can also check the focus in Playback mode (p. 160).
**Switching between Focus Settings**

You can set the AF mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Continuous</th>
<th>The camera is continually focusing on whatever it is aimed at even when the shutter button is not pressed, allowing you to shoot without missing opportunities.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single</td>
<td>The camera only focuses when the shutter button is pressed halfway, conserving battery power.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Select [AF Mode].**
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select [AF Mode].

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the or button to select AF mode.
   2. Press the MENU button.
## Selecting an AF Frame Mode

The AF frame indicates the area of the composition on which the camera focuses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AF Frame</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Face Detect</td>
<td>The camera detects a face and sets the focus, exposure<em>1 and white balance</em>2. In addition, the camera meters the subject so that the face is correctly illuminated when the flash fires. *1 Only in evaluative metering mode (p. 139) *2 Only in (p. 141)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>The AF frame will be fixed to center. This is recommended when the target subject is at the center of the composition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FlexiZone</td>
<td>The AF frame can be moved manually to the desired area (FlexiZone). This is convenient for making sure the focus is exactly where you want it. You can change the AF frame size (p. 123).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Select [AF Frame].

1. Press the MENU button.
2. In the menu, use the or button to select [AF Frame].

### 2 Make settings.

1. Use the or button to select an AF frame option.
2. Press the MENU button.

- See Changing the AF Frame Size (p. 123).
- See Moving the AF Frame (p. 122).
The AF frame appears as follows when the shutter button is pressed halfway.
- Green: Shooting preparations complete
- Yellow: Focusing difficulty ([Center] or [FlexiZone] option)
- No AF frame: Focusing difficulty ([Face Detect] option)

### Face Detect Feature

- When the camera detects faces, AF frames will be displayed on a maximum of three faces. At this point, the frame the camera judges to be the main subject appears in white while the others appear in gray. When the shutter button is pressed halfway and the camera focuses, up to 9 green AF frames may appear. You can also select the person you wish to focus on (p. 124).
- The camera will shoot using [Center] not the [Face Detect] function if a white frame fails to appear and only gray frames display, or if a face is not detected.
- The camera may mistakenly identify non-human subjects as a face.
- In certain cases, faces may not be detected.
  Examples:
  - If faces are at the edge of the screen, or appear extremely small, large, dark or bright, relative to the overall composition.
  - Faces turned to the side or at a diagonal, or faces with a portion hidden.
Moving the AF Frame ([FlexiZone] Selected)

The AF frame can be moved manually allowing you to focus precisely on the desired area of your subject.

1. **Press the ** button.  
   - The AF frame will display in green.

2. **Move the AF frame using the control dial and press the ** button.  
   - You can move the AF frame to the position you wish to set using the , , or button.  
   - The AF frame will move back to its original position (center), if you hold down the button.  
   - When the camera detects faces, each press of the menu button moves the AF frame to a different face position.

- When the [Spot AE Point] is selected as the metering mode, you can use the selected Spot AE Point as the AF frame (p. 139).  
- Selection cannot be made while in the manual focus mode (p. 129).  
- If you turn off the camera or the lens retracts in playback mode (p. 44), the AF frame returns to the center position.
Changing the AF Frame Size ([FlexiZone] selected)

You can change the size of the AF frame to match the size of the subject. When your target subject is small or when you want to focus on a specific portion of the subject, you can decrease the size of the AF frame to shrink the area of focus.

1. **Press the ` button.**
   - The AF frame will display in green.

2. **Press the DISP. button.**
   - Each time you press the DISP. button, the AF frame settings will switch between normal and small.
   - When the camera has difficulty focusing on the subject when you press the shutter button halfway, the AF frame will display in yellow.
   - Pressing the ` button (or the FUNC./SET button) completes the setting.

The AF frame size is set to normal when the digital zoom, digital tele-converter or manual focus is used.
Selecting a Subject to Focus On (Face Select and Track)

Available Shooting Modes  p. 300

Once the focus is fixed to a subject’s face, the frame can be set to follow the subject within a certain range. Set the AF frame mode to [Face Detect] in advance (p. 120).

1 Select a face to focus on.

1. Press the button while faces are detected by the camera.
   - The camera enters face select mode, and the face frame ( ) of the main subject displays in green. Even if the subject moves, the frame will follow the subject within a certain range.
   - The face frame will not display when a face is not detected.

2. Select the person you wish to focus on.
   - When several faces have been detected, pressing the or button or turning the control dial will move the face frame to another subject.
   - Holding down the DISP. button for more than 1 second will display face frames (up to 35) of all the detected faces (green: face of main subject, white: detected faces).
3. Press the \( \text{ } \) button again.
   - The camera exits face designation mode, and the face frame \((\text{ } \)\) of the main subject will change to white (the frame will continue to follow the subject within a certain range).
   - Holding the \( \text{ } \) button pressed will release the face detection mode.

2 Press the shutter button halfway.
   - The face frame \((\text{ } \)\) of main subject will change into a green \( \).  
   - If the camera has difficulty focusing, the face frame will display in yellow.

3 Press the shutter button all the way to shoot.

⚠️ In the following cases, the face select mode will be canceled.
- When turning the power off and back on
- When switching to another shooting mode
- When using the digital zoom or digital tele-converter
- When the \text{MENU} button is pressed to display the menu
- When a selected face cannot be tracked for several seconds
Shooting with Servo AF

Available Shooting Modes  p. 300

With Servo AF, the focus remains on a subject for as long as the shutter button is pressed halfway, so you do not miss opportunities to capture a moving subject.

1 **Select [Servo AF].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the **menu**, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Servo AF].

2 **Make settings.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select [On].
   2. Press the **MENU** button.

3 **Press the shutter button halfway.**
   - [Face Detect]: Focus remains on the main subject marked with the blue AF frame for as long as the shutter button is pressed halfway.
   - [Center], [FlexiZone]: Focus remains on the blue AF frame in the center for as long as the shutter button is pressed halfway.

4 **Press the shutter button all the way to shoot.**

⚠️ This option is not available in the following situations.
- When ✒ is selected
- When MF is set
Shooting Hard-to-Focus Subjects
(Focus Lock, AF Lock, Manual Focus, Safety MF)

It may be difficult to focus on the following types of subjects.
• Subjects with extremely low contrast to the surroundings
• Scenes with a mixture of near and far subjects
• Subjects with extremely bright objects at the center of the composition
• Subjects that are moving quickly
• Subjects through glass

Shooting with the Focus Lock

1. Aim the camera so that an object at the same focal distance as the main subject is centered in the AF frame displayed on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).

2. Keep the shutter button pressed halfway while you recompose the image.

3. Press the shutter button fully to shoot the image.

Shooting with the AF Lock

1. Aim the camera so that an object at the same focal distance as the main subject is centered in the AF frame.

2. Press and hold the shutter button halfway and press the MF button.
   • and the MF Indicator will be displayed to confirm the distance from the subject.
3 Re-aim the camera to compose the shot as desired and shoot.

To Release the AF Lock:
Press the MF button.

⚠️ When [Servo AF] (p. 126) is set to [On], AF lock cannot be used.

- In mode, you cannot enable AF lock using the method on p. 127. Instead, you can use AF lock by registering AFL to [Set Shortcut button] (p. 154).
- The AF frame does not appear in the mode, so be sure to point the camera at the subject on which you want to focus.
- When shooting with focus lock or AF lock using the LCD monitor, you can simplify shooting by setting [AF Frame] to [FlexiZone] or [Center] (p. 120) so that only one AF frame is active.
- The AF lock is convenient because you can let go of the shutter button to compose the image. Moreover, the AF lock is still effective after the picture is taken, allowing you to capture a second image with the same focus.
- When you shoot a subject through glass, try to shoot as close to the glass as possible to reduce the chances of light reflecting back off the glass.
Shooting in Manual Focus Mode

The focus can be manually set.

1. Press the MF button to display MF.

- The MF indicator is displayed.
- When the menu’s [MF-Point Zoom] is set to [On], the portion of the image in the AF frame will appear magnified*. When the AF mode (p. 119) is set to [Continuous], turning the control dial will display the portion magnified. The magnified position will differ depending on the AF Frame Mode (p. 120) setting.
  - In [FlexiZone]: The position of the AF frame displayed immediately prior to setting the manual focus will be magnified.
  - Settings other than [FlexiZone]: The center of the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) is magnified.

* Can also be set so that the image displayed is not magnified (p. 55). Also when using , digital zoom or while displaying the image on a TV, the display magnification is not available.

- With each press of the button, the settings that can be configured with the control dial in each shooting mode will change as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCN</th>
<th>SCN mode/Exposure compensation/ MF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exposure shift/ MF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exposure compensation/ MF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shutter speed/Exposure compensation/ MF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aperture value/Exposure compensation/ MF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shutter speed/Aperture value/ MF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Use the control dial and adjust the focus.
   • The MF indicator shows approximate figures. Use them as a shooting guideline only.

To Cancel the Manual Focus:
Press the MF button.

⚠ You cannot change the AF frame setting while focusing manually. Cancel the manual focus mode, then change the AF frame setting.

Using the Manual Focus in Combination with the Auto Focus (Safety MF)
First, manual focus is used to roughly focus, then from that focus position the camera automatically focuses more accurately. You can use the following two methods.

■ Setting by the 

1 Focus the camera with the manual focus, then press the button.
   • The camera beeps and focuses to a more accurate focusing point.
Setting the Safety MF

1. **Select [Safety MF].**
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select [Safety MF].

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the or button to select [On].
   2. Press the MENU button.

3. **Focus the camera with the manual focus, then press the shutter button halfway.**
   - The camera focuses to a more accurate focusing point.

4. **To shoot, press the shutter button fully.**
Focus Bracketing (Focus-BKT Mode)

The camera automatically takes three shots: one at the manual focus position, and one each with focus positions preset farther and nearer. The three shots are taken at the same interval as continuous shooting (p. 110). The farther and nearer focus positions can be set in three steps: large, medium and small.

The Focus-BKT mode is not available when shooting with the flash on. Only one image at the manual focus position will be recorded.

1. **Select the Focus-BKT.**
   1. Press the FUNC. button.
   2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select \( \text{BKT-Off} \) and use the ← or → button to select \( \text{Focus-BKT} \).
   3. Press the DISP. button.

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Set the amount of focus position offset with the ← or → button to select.
   2. Press the FUNC. button.

   - Press the → button to broaden or the ← button to narrow the focusing distance from the center.

3. **Shoot the image with manual focus (p. 129).**

To Cancel the Focus-BKT Mode:
Select \( \text{BKT-Off} \) (BKT-Off) in Step 1.
You can set the exposure and focus separately. This is effective when the contrast is too strong between the subject and background or when a subject is backlit.

1. **Confirm that the flash is lowered.**
   - is displayed.

2. **Aim the camera at the subject on which you wish to lock the exposure.**

3. **Press the shutter button halfway and press the button.**
   - The exposure setting will lock and will display.

4. **Re-aim the camera to compose the shot as desired and shoot.**

To Release the AE Lock:
Operate a button other than the control dial.

- In movie mode, AE lock can also be set/canceled (p. 92).
- You can use the FE lock when using the flash.
Changing the Shutter Speed and Aperture Value Combination

The automatically selected combinations of shutter speeds and aperture values can be freely changed without altering the exposure to shoot images (Program Shift).

1. **Aim the camera at the subject on which you wish to lock the exposure.**

2. **Press the shutter button halfway and press the button.**
   - The exposure setting will lock, and $\times$ will display on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).

3. **Use the control dial to change shutter speed and aperture value combinations.**

4. **Recompose the image and shoot.**
   - The setting will cancel after the shot is taken.
You can lock the flash exposure so that the exposure settings are correctly set regardless of the composition of your subject.

1. **Raise the flash.**

2. **In P mode press the † button and select (flash on).**
   - If you are using an externally mounted flash, please refer to its manual for setting instructions.

3. **Aim the camera at the subject on which you wish to lock the exposure.**

4. **Press and hold the shutter button halfway and press the  button.**
   - The flash will pre-fire and the exposure setting will be locked.
   - will display on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).

5. **Re-aim the camera to compose the shot as desired and shoot.**

To Release the FE Lock:
Operate a button other than the control dial.

The FE lock cannot be used when [Flash Mode] in the [Flash Control] menu is set to [Manual].
Adjusting the Exposure Compensation

Adjust the exposure compensation to a positive value to avoid making the subject too dark when it is backlit or shot against a bright background. Adjust the exposure compensation to a negative value to avoid making the subject too bright in night shots or when shot against a dark background.

1. **Press** button to display the exposure compensation bar.

2. **Adjust the exposure compensation.**
   1. Use the control dial to adjust the exposure compensation.
   2. Press the button.

   - The exposure compensation bar and the compensation results will display in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).
   - When shooting in AEB mode (p. 138), the compensation range for AEB shooting is displayed.
   - With each press of the button, the settings that can be configured with the control dial in each shooting mode will change as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCN</td>
<td>SCN mode/Exposure compensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📽️</td>
<td>Sequence direction selection/Exposure compensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tv</td>
<td>Shutter speed/Exposure compensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Av</td>
<td>Aperture value/Exposure compensation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To Cancel the Exposure Compensation:
Follow Step 2 to restore the compensation value to [0].
In movie mode, the exposure shift can be set/canceled (p. 92).

**Shooting while Brightening Dark Areas (i-Contrast)**

When shooting scenes in which faces or subjects appear darkened, you can set the camera to automatically detect faces and dark areas and compensate brightness levels while shooting.

1. **Select [i-Contrast].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the **menu**, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [i-Contrast].

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select [Auto].
   2. Press the **MENU** button.

- i-Contrast is not available when shooting still images while shooting movies.
- When **RAW** is selected, [i-Contrast] cannot be set.
- Depending on the scene being shot, the compensation results may not be as expected.
- You can use the [i-Contrast] setting in the Play menu to apply brightness compensation to images already captured (p. 190).
In this mode, the camera automatically changes the exposure within a set range to take three shots at the same interval as continuous shooting (p. 110). The images are shot in the following order: Standard exposure, underexposure and overexposure.

1 Select AEB.
   1. Press the button.
   2. Use the or button to select and use the or button to select .
   3. Press the DISP. button.

2 Adjust the compensation range.
   1. Adjust the compensation range with the or button.
   2. Press the button.

   • The compensation range can be set as wide as 2 levels lower and 2 levels higher than the standard exposure value (the compensated exposure value if exposure adjustment was performed) at the center point in 1/3 increments. If exposure adjustment (p. 136) is already done, setting can be done with the adjusted value as the center point.

To Cancel the AEB Mode:
Select in Step 1.

The AEB mode is not available when shooting with the flash on. Only one standard exposure image will be recorded.
Various Shooting Methods

Switching between Metering Modes

Available Shooting Modes ➞ p. 300

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Evaluative</td>
<td>Appropriate for standard shooting conditions, including backlit scenes. The camera divides images into several zones for metering. It evaluates complex lighting conditions, such as the position of the subject, the brightness, the direct light, and the backlighting, and adjusts the settings to the correct exposure for the main subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center Weighted Avg.</td>
<td>Averages the light metered from the entire frame, but gives greater weight to the subject matter at the center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spot AE Point</td>
<td>Meters the area within the spot AE point frame. Use this mode when there is a large divergence in brightness between the subject and surroundings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>Locks the spot metering frame to the center of the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF Point</td>
<td>Move the spot AE point to the same position as the selected AF frame. Can be set only in [FlexiZone] (p. 120).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Change the metering mode.**
   1. Press the \( \text{FUNC SET} \) button.
   2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select \( \text{FUNC SET} \) and the ← or → button to change the option.
   3. Select the \( \text{FUNC SET} \) button.
Moving the Spot AE Point to the AF Frame/Centering the Spot AE Point

1. **Select [FlexiZone].**
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the ◎ menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [AF Frame].
   3. Use the ← or → button to select [FlexiZone].

2. **Select [Spot AE Point].**
   1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Spot AE Point].

3. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select [Center] or [AF Point].
   2. Press the MENU button.

- When [Spot AE Point] is set to [Center], the spot AE point frame appears at the center of the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).
- When [AF Point] is set, it appears inside the selected AF frame.
Adjusting the Tone (White Balance)

Normally, the Auto (Auto) white balance setting selects an optimal white balance. When the Auto setting cannot produce natural looking colors, change the white balance using a setting appropriate for the light source.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>Settings are automatically set by the camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day Light</td>
<td>For recording outdoors on a bright day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloudy</td>
<td>For recording under overcast, shady or twilight skies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tungsten</td>
<td>For recording under tungsten and bulb-type 3-wavelength fluorescent lighting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent</td>
<td>For recording under warm-white, cool-white or warmwhite (3-wavelength) fluorescent lighting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent H</td>
<td>For recording under daylight fluorescent, or daylight fluorescent-type 3-wavelength fluorescent lighting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash</td>
<td>When using the flash (cannot be set in mode).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom</td>
<td>For recording with the optimal white balance data retained in the camera from a white-colored object, such as white paper or cloth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Select a white balance setting.

1. Press the button.
2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select button to select ↑ or → button to change the option.
3. Press the button.

The white balance setting cannot be adjusted when or is selected for My Colors.
Using the Custom White Balance

Take a custom white balance (Custom) reading for the following situations that are difficult for the (Auto) setting to detect correctly.

- Shooting subjects of monotone color (such as sky, sea or forest)
- Shooting with a particular source of light (such as a mercury-vapor lamp)
- Shooting close-ups (Macro)

1. **Select .**
   1. Press the button.
   2. Use the or button to select and use the or button to select .

2. **Aim the camera at a piece of white paper or cloth and press the DISP. button.**
   - Ensure that the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) is completely filled with the white image. Please note, however, that the center frame will not display when the digital zoom is used or when is displayed.

3. **Press the button.**
You are recommended to set the shooting mode to P and the exposure compensation setting to [±0] before setting a custom white balance. The correct white balance may not be obtained when the exposure setting is incorrect (image appears completely black or white).

When taking a white balance data reading at close range while using flash, you may not be able to obtain proper exposure. After obtaining the white balance data, be sure to check whether the proper color balance was obtained. If not, increase the distance between the camera and the white paper or cloth that you wish to use as the standard, and take the white balance data reading again.

Shoot with the same settings as when reading the white balance data. If the settings differ, the optimal white balance may not be set. In particular, the following should not be changed.

- ISO Speed
- Flash:
  Setting the flash to ⬇️ or ⬆️ is recommended. If the flash fires when reading the white balance data with the flash set to ⬇️, make sure that you also use the flash when you shoot.

Since the white balance data cannot be read in Stitch Assist mode, preset the white balance in another shooting mode beforehand.

The white balance data is retained even after the camera power is turned off.
**Shooting in a My Colors Mode**

You can change the look of an image when it is shot.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My Colors Off</td>
<td>Records normally with this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vivid</td>
<td>Emphasizes the contrast and color saturation to record bold colors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Tones down the contrast and color saturation to record neutral hues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepia</td>
<td>Records in sepia tones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B/W</td>
<td>Records in black and white.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive Film</td>
<td>Use this option to make blue, green or red colors more intense like the Vivid Blue, Vivid Green or Vivid Red effects. It can produce intense natural-appearing colors like those obtained with positive film.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighter Skin Tone*</td>
<td>Use this option to make skin tones lighter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darker Skin Tone*</td>
<td>Use this option to make skin tones darker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vivid Blue</td>
<td>Emphasize blue tints. Use to make blue subjects, such as the sky or ocean, more vivid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vivid Green</td>
<td>Emphasize green tints. Use to make green subjects, such as mountains, new growth, flowers and lawns, more vivid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vivid Red</td>
<td>Emphasize red tints. Use to make red subjects, such as flowers or cars, more vivid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Color</td>
<td>Use this option to adjust the contrast, sharpness or saturation settings or the color balance between red, green, blue and skin tones*. It can be used to make subtle adjustments, such as making blue colors more vivid or face colors brighter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* If the image contains colors that are the same as human skin, those colors will also be changed. You may not obtain the expected results depending on the skin color.

When the recording pixels is set to RAW, the My Colors cannot be set.
Various Shooting Methods

1 Select a My Colors setting.
1. Press the \( \text{FUNC} \) button.
2. Use the \( \uparrow \) or \( \downarrow \) button to select \( \text{My Colors} \) and the \( \leftarrow \) or \( \rightarrow \) button to change the option.
3. Press the \( \text{FUNC} \) button.

(Setting the Custom Color Mode)

1 Select \( \text{Cc} \).
1. Press the \( \text{FUNC} \) button.
2. Use the \( \uparrow \) or \( \downarrow \) button to select \( \text{My Colors} \) and choose \( \text{Cc} \) with the \( \leftarrow \) or \( \rightarrow \) button.
2 Adjust the setting.

1. Press the DISP. button.
2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Contrast], [Sharpness], [Saturation], [Red], [Green], [Blue] or [Skin Tone].
3. Use the ← or → button to adjust the setting.
   • The adjustment results display.
   • If you press the DISP. button, you will return to the screen where you can select a My Colors mode.
4. Press the FUNC. button.
   • Return to the shooting screen to shoot.
Changing the Colors and Shooting

Available Shooting Modes  p. 300

You can easily change the colors in an image when it is shot for both stills and movies, allowing you to enjoy producing various effects. Depending on the shooting conditions, however, the images may appear rough, or you may not get the expected color. Before photographing important subjects, we recommend taking trial shots and checking the results. By setting the [Save Original] function (p. 151) to [On] when shooting stills, you can also record both the altered image and the original, unaltered image.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Color Accent</td>
<td>Use this option to have only the color specified in the screen remain and to transform all others to black and white.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color Swap</td>
<td>Use this option to transform a color specified in the screen into another. The specified color can only be swapped into one other color, and multiple colors cannot be chosen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ You cannot switch between the LCD monitor display and the viewfinder display.

⚠️ Depending on the scene being shot, the ISO speed may increase, increasing the amount of noise in the image.

Shooting with Color Accent Mode

1. **Select **

   1. Set the mode dial to **SCN**.
   2. Use the control dial to select **A**.
2 Press the DISP. button.
- The camera will switch to color input mode, and the display will alternate between the original image and the Color Accent image (using the previously set color).

3 Aim the camera so that the color you wish to retain appears at the center of the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) and press the ↓ button.
- Only one color can be specified.
- You can use the ↑ or ↓ button or the control dial to specify the range of the colors that are retained.
  -5: Only takes the color that you want to retain.
  +5: Also takes colors close to the one that you want to retain.

4 Press the DISP. button to complete the setting, then shoot.
- When you press the Movie button, you can shoot movies in Color Accent mode.

- The default Color Accent is green.
- You may not obtain the expected results if you use the flash.
- The specified Color Accent and color range is retained even if the camera’s power is turned off.
Shooting with Color Swap Mode

1. Select \( \text{\text{\text{S}}} \).
   1. Set the mode dial to \( \text{SCN} \).
   2. Use the control dial to select \( \text{\text{\text{S}}} \).

2. Press the \( \text{DISP.} \) button.
   • The camera will switch to color input mode, and the display will alternate between the original image and the color swap image (using the previously set color).
3 Aim the camera so that the original color appears at the center of the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) and press the ✈ button.
• Only one color can be specified.
• You can use the ↑ or ↓ button or the control dial to specify the range of colors that are changed.
  –5: Only takes the color that you want to swap.
  +5: Also takes colors close to the one that you want to swap.

4 Aim the camera so that the desired color appears at the center of the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) and press the ✈ button.
• Only one color can be specified.

5 Press the DISP. button to complete the setting, then shoot.
• When you press the Movie button, you can shoot movies in Color Swap mode.

- The default setting for Color Swap changes green into white.
- You may not obtain the expected results if you use the flash.
- The colors and color range specified in the Color Swap mode are retained even if the camera’s power is turned off.


**Saving Original Images**

Not only can you save images with altered colors when shooting still images with the Color Accent or Color Swap modes, but you can also choose to save the original images (before the color change).

1. **Select [Save Original].**
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Save Original].

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select [On] or [Off].
   2. Press the MENU button.

You cannot save the originals of still images taken while shooting a movie in Color Accent or Color Swap mode.

If [Save Original] is set to [On]
- The transformed image is reviewed in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) after shooting in the Color Accent or Color Swap mode. If you erase the image at this point, the original image is erased along with the transformed image. Exercise adequate caution before deleting a file.
- Since two images are recorded with each shot, the number of shots remaining is approximately half the number displayed in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) when this function is set to [Off].
- The images are numbered consecutively. The original images are assigned the lower number and the transformed color accent or color swap images the next number.
## Categorizing Images Automatically (Auto Category)

If you set Auto Category to [On], images are automatically sorted into preset categories as they are recorded.

### Available Shooting Modes

- **People**: For images shot in **portrait** or **landscape** mode, or images with faces detected when in face select mode or [AF Frame] is set to [Face Detect].
- **Scenery**: For images shot in **night**, **night view**, **night landscape**, or **pictorial** mode.
- **Events**: For images shot in **sports**, **beach**, **snow**, **underwater**, or **fireworks** mode.

### Instructions

1. **Select [Auto Category].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the **Rec** menu, use the **Up** or **Down** button to select [Auto Category].

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the **Left** or **Right** button to select [On] or [Off].
   2. Press the **MENU** button.

Movies and images that are not automatically categorized can be categorized using the My Category function (p. 164).
You can save frequently used shooting modes and various shooting settings to the C (Custom) mode. When necessary, you can then shoot images with previously saved settings by simply turning the mode dial to C. Settings that are not retained when the shooting mode is changed or when the power is turned off (such as continuous shooting or self-timer) are also retained.

1 Switch to the shooting mode you wish to save and set the settings.
   - Functions which can be saved in C.
     - Shooting mode (P, Tv, Av, M)
     - Items which can be set in P, Tv, Av and M modes (pp. 101 – 107)
     - Rec. menu settings
     - Zoom location
     - Manual focus location
     - My Menu settings
   - To change some of the settings saved in C (other than shooting mode), select C, and set again.

2 Select [Save Settings].
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select [Save Settings].
   3. Press the button.
You can register a function that you often use when shooting with the "Register." button.

1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
2. Press the FUNC. button.
3. Press the MENU button.

- The setting contents do not influence other shooting modes.
- Saved settings can be reset (p. 230).

### Registering Functions to the "Button

You can register a function that you often use when shooting with the " button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Menu Item</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Light Metering</td>
<td>p. 139</td>
<td>Digital Tele-converter</td>
<td>p. 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Balance</td>
<td>p. 141</td>
<td>i-Contrast</td>
<td>p. 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom White Balance</td>
<td>p. 142</td>
<td>AE Lock</td>
<td>p. 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AF Lock</td>
<td>p. 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Display Off</td>
<td>p. 155</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Select [Set Shortcut button].

1. Press the MENU button.
2. In the menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Set Shortcut button].
3. Press the FUNC. button.
2 Make settings.

1. Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to select the function you wish to register.
2. Press the FUNC button.
3. Press the MENU button.

- If ☑ displays to the icon’s lower right, you can register the function, but you cannot use it with some shooting modes or settings even if you press the FUNC button.

To Cancel the Shortcut Button:
Select ☑ in Step 2.

Using the  Button

1 Press the  button.

- ☑, T, C: Each time that the  button is pressed, the settings of the registered functions are switched.
- ☑, WB: The corresponding setup screen is displayed.
- C: Each press of the  button records the white balance data. Ensure that the white paper or cloth is positioned so it appears at the center of the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) and then press the  button. After using this function once, the white balance setting changes to C.
- AEL: Each press of the  button sets AE lock. When shooting movies, AE is set again and then locked (cannot be operated when the exposure shift bar is displayed).
- AFL: Each press of the  button sets AF lock. When shooting movies, AF is set again and then locked.
- : Pressing the  button turns off the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder). The display turns on again by pressing any button other than the power button or changing the camera orientation.
You can quickly access commonly used menu items from a single screen by registering them in My Menu. You can also configure My Menu to appear immediately after pressing the MENU button in shooting mode.

### 1. Select [My Menu settings].

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Use the ← or → button to select the menu.
3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [My Menu settings].
4. Press the button.

### 2. Select the menu items to register.

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Select items].
2. Press the button.
3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select the menu item you wish to register.
4. Press the button.
   - Up to five menu items can be registered.
   - To cancel registration, press FUNC./SET again to remove the ✓ mark.
   - You can register a menu item even if it appears gray. However, you may not be able to use the item depending on the shooting mode.
5. Press the MENU button.
3 **Change the order in which menu items are displayed.**

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Sort].
2. Press the \(\text{FUNC.} \) button.
3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a menu item to move.
4. Press the \(\text{FUNC.} \) button.
5. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to move the menu item.
6. Press the \(\text{FUNC.} \) button.
7. Press the \(\text{MENU} \) button.

4 **Set a default view.**

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Set default view].
2. Use the ← or → button to select [Yes].
   - [Yes]: When pressing the \(\text{MENU} \) button, [My Menu] will be displayed.
   - [No]: When pressing the \(\text{MENU} \) button, [Rec. Menu] will be displayed.
3. Press the \(\text{MENU} \) button twice.
**Playback/Erasing**

In playback mode, you can select images with the control dial. Turning it counterclockwise selects the previous image while turning it clockwise selects the next image. Please also see *Viewing Still Images* (p. 19).

---

**Viewing Magnified Images**

1. **Press the zoom lever toward  Picture.**
   - A magnified portion of the image will display.
   - Images can be magnified up to a factor of approximately 10x.

   ![Approximate location of the displayed area](image)

2. **Use the , , ← or → button to move around the image.**
   - If you use the control dial while in the magnified display mode, the camera will switch to the previous or next image at the same level of magnification.
   - You can change the magnification level with the zoom lever.

To Cancel the Magnified Display:
Press the zoom lever toward  Picture. (You can also cancel it immediately by pressing the MENU button.)

- * and index playback images cannot be magnified.
Viewing Images in Sets of 12 (Index Playback)

1. Press the zoom lever toward 
   • Up to 12 images can be viewed at once in index playback.
   • Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button or control dial to change the image selection.

To Return to Single Image Playback:
Press the zoom lever toward 

Switching between Sets of 12 Images
The jump bar will display if you press the button while in index playback and you can switch the display between sets of 12 images.
• Pressing the zoom lever toward also switches the display.
• Use the ← or → button or control dial to move to the previous or next set of 12 images.
• Hold the FUNC./SET button down and press the ← or → button to jump to the first or last set.

To Return to Single Image Playback:
Press the button.

Images will be displayed in sets of 9 when viewing on a TV using the A/V Out terminal (p. 231).
Checking the Focus and People’s Expressions (Focus Check Display)

Focus Check display allows you to check the focus of images taken. Moreover, as you can change the display size and switch images, you can easily check facial expressions and whether a subject’s eyes are closed.

Displaying the Focus Check

1. Press the DISP. button several times until the Focus Check displays.

- Frames are displayed on the image as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame color</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>Displays an area of the image at bottom right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>Displays on detected faces or locations the camera focuses on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gray</td>
<td>Displays frames in positions where faces were detected during playback.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The orange frames allow you to change the display magnification, move the display position, and switch between display frames (p. 161).
Changing the Display Magnification and Display Position

2 Press the zoom lever toward  
   • Bottom right of the screen will be displayed prominently and the display size and display position can be changed.

3 Change the setting.
   • You can change the display size by pressing the zoom lever.
   • You can change the display position by using the ↑, ↓, ← or → button.
   • If the number of focused AF frames or detected faces is 1 or 0, the orange frame returns to its original position when you press the FUNC./SET button. (If you zoomed in or out on a detected face, the size of the frame will revert to the original face size.)

To Cancel Changing the Display Size and Display Position:
Press the MENU button.

Switching Frames

2 Press the button.
   • If there are multiple focused AF frames or detected faces, the orange frame changes its position when you press the FUNC./SET button. (If you zoomed in or out on a detected face, the size of the frame will revert to the original face size.)
Jumping to Images

When you have many images recorded onto a memory card, it is handy to use the search keys below to jump over images to find the object of your search.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Search Key</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jump Shot Date</td>
<td>Jumps to the first image of each shooting date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jump to My Category</td>
<td>Jumps to the first image of each folder sorted by the Auto Category (p. 152) or My Category (p. 164) functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jump to Folder</td>
<td>Displays the first image in each folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jump to Movie</td>
<td>Jumps to a movie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jump 10 images</td>
<td>Jumps over 10 images at a time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jump 100 images</td>
<td>Jumps over 100 images at a time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **In single image playback mode, press the button.**
   - The camera will switch to jump search mode.

2. **Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a search key.**
   - The screen sample will vary slightly according to the search key.
   - You can show/hide image information using the DISP. button.
3 Display the Images.

**Selected**

1. Use the ◄ or ► button to select date, category or folder for playback.
   - You can check the target image by using the control dial.
   - If you select ◄ when an image has not been assigned to any category, you will only be able to select ◄ (none) as a search key.

2. Press the 
   - The camera will switch to defined playback mode and display a blue frame. You can limit playback to the images corresponding to the search key.
   - Press the ◄ button to cancel defined playback mode.

**Selected**

1. Press the ◄ or ► button.
   - Pressing the MENU button cancels the setting.
   - Press the FUNC./SET button to switch to defined playback mode when ◄ is selected. A blue frame displays.

The defined playback mode will be canceled under the following circumstances.
- Changing categories (while using My Category to define images).
- When you press the FUNC./SET button while specifying a range of images, and the first or last image is displayed.
- When displaying images not supported in defined playback (except when selecting images in a range).
- When newly saving images that have effects added or edited.
- When images are deleted using [Erase] from the menu.
Organizing Images by Category (My Category)

You can organize images into prepared categories. Category information recorded with the [Auto Category] function (p. 152) can be edited. You can also organize one image into multiple categories. The following operations can be performed if the images are sorted into categories.

- Image searches (p. 162)
- Slide Show (p. 179)
- Protect (p. 199)
- Erase (p. 203)
- Configure print settings (p. 209)

**Category Selection Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select</th>
<th>For viewing and selecting images singly.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Range</td>
<td>For picking a first and last image and selecting all the images in the range.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1 Select [My Category].**

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. In the **menu**, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select  .
3. Press the **button**.

**2 Choose a selection method.**

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to choose a selection method.
2. Press the **button**.
[Select]

3. **Categorize the images.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select images to categorize.
   2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a category.
   3. Press the FUNC./SET button.

   • Pressing the FUNC./SET button again cancels the setting.
   • This also can be set in the index playback mode.
   • Press the MENU button to complete the setting.

[Select Range]

3. **Select the first image.**
   • You can use the control dial to select the first or last image.

   1. Press the FUNC./SET button.

   2. Use the ← or → button to select the first image in the range to categorize.
   3. Press the FUNC./SET button.
4 Select the last image.

1. Use the ➔ button to select [Last image].
2. Press the FUNC. button.

3. Use the ◄ or ➔ button to select the last image in the range to categorize.
4. Press the FUNC. button.
   • An image with a lower number than the first image cannot be selected as the last image.
   • Up to 500 images can be selected.

5 Select a category.

1. Press the ◄ button.
2. Use the ◄ or ➔ button to select a category.

6 Make settings.

1. Press the ◄ button to select [Select].
2. Press the FUNC. button.
   • The screen will return to the selection method screen.
   • Selecting [Deselect] cancels categorization of the selected range.
You can trim a required portion of a recorded image and save it as a new image file. Trimming is only possible at the same aspect ratio as that of the image. The aspect ratio is fixed to the aspect ratio set when shooting (p. 80).

1 Select [Trimming].
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select ．
   3. Press the button.

2 Select an image.
   1. Use the or button to select an image for trimming.
   2. Press the button.

   - The trimming frame (the area of the image which can be trimmed) is displayed in green.
3 Adjust the trimming frame.

- You can change the size of the trimming frame using the zoom lever. However, the resolution of the saved image will differ according to the size of the trimmed image.
- You can change the position of the trimming frame using the , ,  or  button.
- Press the DISP. button to change the vertical/horizontal orientation of the trimming frame.
- If a face is detected, a gray frame appears around the face displayed in the top left screen. Trimming can be performed around this gray frame. If multiple frames are displayed, you can switch between frames by turning the control dial.

4 Save the image.

1. Press the  button.
2. Use the  or  button to select [OK].
3. Press the  button.

- The trimmed image will be saved in a new file.
- If you wish to continue trimming of another image, repeat operations from Step 2.
5 Display the saved image.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Use the ← or → button to select [Yes].
3. Press the **SET** button.

• Selecting [No] returns to the Play menu.

- **S**, **XS**, **SW** or **RAW** images, and images recorded in **RAW** cannot be trimmed.
- Some images shot with another camera may not be trimmed.
- The resolution of a trimmed image will be less than before trimming.
# Viewing Movies

## Display a movie.

1. Use the ◄ or ► button to select a movie.
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.

- Images with a SET icon are movies.

## Play the movie.

1. Use the ◄ or ► button to select ►.
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.

- The movie will pause if you press the FUNC./SET button during playback. It will resume when you press the button again.
- When playback ends, the movie stops at the last frame displayed. Press the FUNC./SET button to display the movie control panel.
- You can switch between showing/hiding the playback progress bar by pressing the DISP. button while playing a movie.
- If playback was halted partway through in the prior viewing session, playback will resume from the last frame displayed.
## Operating the Movie Control Panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exit</td>
<td>Ends playback and returns to single image playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print</td>
<td>An icon will display when a printer is connected*. See the Direct Print User Guide for details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>Starts playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow Motion</td>
<td>You can use the button to slow down or the button to speed up playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Frame</td>
<td>Displays the first frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous Frame</td>
<td>Rewinds if the FUNC./SET button is held down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Frame</td>
<td>Fast Forwards if the FUNC./SET button is held down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Frame</td>
<td>Displays the last frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
<td>Switches to the movie editing mode (p. 174).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Printing is possible only from printers that support (PictBridge) connections. For details, refer to the operating instructions for your printer.

- Movies cannot be played in the index playback mode.

- Use the television’s controls to adjust the volume when playing a movie on a TV set (p. 231).
- The sound cannot be played in slow motion playback.
- You can also connect the camera to a high-definition TV (p. 233).
- Using the supplied software, you can also transfer movies onto a computer and perform playback from the computer (p. 28)
Enhancing Your Movie Viewing Experience

Depending on the environment on your computer when viewing movies, playback may not be smooth due to frame loss and audio may be choppy. By using a memory card reader and copying the movie data back onto a memory card, you can play back the movies smoothly on the camera. Furthermore, you can enhance your movie viewing experience by connecting the camera to your TV. When you copy the movie data back onto a memory card, be sure to use the supplied software.

Copy movies onto a memory card

Playback on your TV

Windows

1. **Start ZoomBrowser EX.**
   - Double-click the shortcut icon on the desktop.

2. **Insert a memory card in the memory card reader.**
   - Confirm that the memory card is recognized.

3. **Copy the movies onto the memory card.**
   1. Click the movie you want to copy.
      - You can select multiple movies by holding down the Shift or Ctrl key while clicking.
   2. Click [Acquire & Camera Settings].
   3. Click [Transfer Images to Memory Card].
   4. Click [Transfer].
      - The movies are copied onto the memory card.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Remove the memory card from the card reader, and insert it into the camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Connect the camera to your TV (pp. 231, 233), and play back the movies (p. 170).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Macintosh**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1    | Start ImageBrowser.  
• Double-click the [ImageBrowser] icon in the Dock (the bar that appears at the bottom of the desktop). |
| 2    | Insert a memory card in the memory card reader.  
• Confirm that the memory card is recognized. |
| 3    | Copy the movies onto the memory card.  
1. Click the movie you want to copy.  
• You can select multiple movies by holding down the Shift or Command key while clicking.  
3. Click [Transfer].  
• The movies are copied onto the memory card. |
| 4    | Remove the memory card from the card reader, and insert it into the camera. |
| 5    | Connect the camera to your TV (pp. 231, 233), and play back the movies (p. 170). |
Editing Movies

You can delete portions of recorded movies.

Movies 1 second or longer before editing can be edited in 1-second increments, but those that are protected or less than 1 second long cannot be edited.

1. **Select [Edit].**
   1. In the movie control panel, use the ← or → button to select.
   2. Press the FUNC. button.

   • The movie editing panel and the movie editing bar will display.
Edit the movie.

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select (Cut Beginning) or (Cut End).

2. Use the ← or → button to specify the cut point (↓).

- While moving the cut point using the ← or → button, the symbol is displayed at each 1 second interval, allowing you to cut the movie at the indicated point.
- Even if you specify the cut point at a position other than , selecting will delete the beginning portion of the movie up to the point just before your specified cut point, and selecting will delete the latter portion of the movie from the point just after your specified cut point. The edited movie will be saved.
- To check a temporarily edited movie, select (Play) and press the FUNC./SET button.
- To continue editing, repeat Step 2.
- Selecting (Exit) cancels the edit and restores the movie control panel.

Select [Save].

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select .

2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
4 **Save the file.**

1. Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to select [New File] or [Overwrite].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.

- [New File] saves the edited movie under a new file name. The pre-edit data is left unchanged. Note, if you press the **FUNC./SET** button while saving the movie, saving is canceled.
- [Overwrite] saves the edited movie with its original name. The pre-edit data is lost.
- When there is not enough space left on the memory card, only [Overwrite] can be selected.

Depending on the movie’s file size, it may take some time to save an edited movie. If the battery runs out of charge partway through, edited movie clips cannot be saved. When editing movies, it is recommended that you use four new AA-size alkaline batteries, fully charged AA-size NiMH batteries, or the separately sold Compact Power Adapter CA-PS700 (p. 267).
Rotating Images in the Display

Images can be rotated clockwise 90° or 270° in the display.

Original  
90°  
270°

1. **Select [Rotate].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the **menu**, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select □.
   3. Press the **FUNC./SET** button.

2. **Rotate the image.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select an image to rotate.
   2. Press the **FUNC./SET** button.

   • Cycle through the 90°/270°/original orientations with each press of the **FUNC./SET** button.
   • This also can be set in the index playback mode.

_movies with an aspect ratio of 16:9 cannot be rotated.
_movies with an aspect ratio of 16:9 cannot be rotated._

_movies with an aspect ratio of 16:9 cannot be rotated._

_movies with an aspect ratio of 16:9 cannot be rotated._

_movies with an aspect ratio of 16:9 cannot be rotated._

_movies with an aspect ratio of 16:9 cannot be rotated._

Movies with an aspect ratio of 16:9 cannot be rotated.

When images are downloaded to a computer, the orientation of images rotated by the camera will depend upon the software used to download the images.

The orientation is recorded in the image.
Playback with Transition Effects

You can select the transition effect displayed when switching between images.

- No transition effect.
- The displayed image darkens and the next image gradually brightens until it is displayed.
- Press the ← button to have the previous image display from the left and the → button to have the next image display from the right.

1. Select [Transition].
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select .

2. Make settings.
   1. Use the or button to select a transition effect.
   2. Press the MENU button.
Automated Playback (Slide Shows)

Automated playback of memory card images.

Image settings for slide shows are based on the Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) standard (p. 209).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All Images</td>
<td>Plays all images on a memory card in order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Plays images bearing a specified date in order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Category</td>
<td>Plays the images in the selected category in order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folder</td>
<td>Plays images in a specified folder in order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movies</td>
<td>Plays movie files only, in order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stills</td>
<td>Plays still images only, in order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom 1 – 3</td>
<td>Plays the images selected for each slide show, Custom 1, Custom 2 or Custom 3, in order (p. 183).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Select [Slide Show].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the **Slide Show** menu, use the **↑** or **↓** button to select **Slide Show**.
   3. Press the **FUNC/SET** button.
2 Select a playback method.

1. Press the \( \uparrow \) button.
2. Use the \( \downarrow \) or \( \rightarrow \) button to select the slide show type.

- \( \text{Calendar, Categories, Folders} \): Press the \textit{FUNC./SET} button to select a date, category or folder to be played back (p. 182).
- \( \text{Image} \): Press the \textit{FUNC./SET} button to select the images to be played back (p. 183).
- If you want to add a transition effect to play back images, use the \( \uparrow \) button to select [Effect] and choose the type of effect with the \( \downarrow \) or \( \rightarrow \) button (p. 181).

3 Start the slide show.

1. Press the \( \downarrow \) button.
2. Use the \( \downarrow \) or \( \rightarrow \) button to select [Start].
3. Press the \( \textit{FUNC./SET} \) button.

- The following functions are available during slide shows.
  - Pausing/resuming: Press the \textit{FUNC./SET} button.
  - Fast forwarding/rewinding: Press the \( \downarrow \) or \( \rightarrow \) button (continue to hold the button to switch between images more rapidly).

To Stop the Slide Show:
Press the \textit{MENU} button.
**Transition Effects**

You can select the transition effect used when one image is replaced by another.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transition Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image" /> No transition effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image" /> The new image gradually brightens as it moves upward from the bottom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image" /> The new image first appears in a cross shape and gradually expands to display the full image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Image" /> Portions of the new image move horizontally, then the image expands to display the full image.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In single image playback mode, you can start a slide show from the current image displayed by holding the **FUNC./SET** button while you press the **button.
Select a date/category/folder to play back (,,)

1 Select a playback method.
1. Use the ← or → button to select , or .
2. Press the button.

2 Select images to play back.
1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a date/category/folder to playback.
2. Press the button.

• A ✓ will appear on selected images.
• To cancel the selection: Press the FUNC./SET button again.
• Multiple selections can be made for the date/category/folder.
• The images will play back in the order of selection (except when selecting category).
• You can check the images for each date/category/folder by using the ← or → button.
• Pressing the MENU button completes the setting.
Selecting Images for Playback (1 – 3)

Select only the images that you wish to play back and save them as a slide show (Custom 1, 2 or 3). Up to 998 images can be selected. They will be played back in their order of selection.

1 Select a playback method.
   1. Use the ◀ or ▶ button to select 1, 2 or 3.
      • Only the 1 icon will display at first.
   2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
      • When you set 1, the icon will change to 1V and 2 will display. 2 and 3 will change in the same way when they are set.

2 Select images to play back.
   1. Use the ◀ or ▶ button to select images to play back.
   2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
      • A ✓ will appear on selected images.
      • To cancel the selection:
         Press the FUNC./SET button again.
      • You can also select images in the index playback mode.
      • Pressing the MENU button completes the setting.
Selecting All Images
2. Use the ↑ button to select [Mark all], press the FUNC./SET button.
3. Use the → button to select [OK] and press the FUNC./SET button.
To deselect all images, select [Reset].

Adjusting the Play Time and Repeat Settings
• Play Time
Sets the duration that each image displays. Choose between 3 – 10 seconds, 15 seconds and 30 seconds. Displaying time can vary slightly depending on the image.
• Repeat
Sets whether the slide show stops when all the slides have been displayed or continues until stopped.

1. Select [Set up].
1. Use the ← or → button to select [Set up].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.

2. Configure the setting.
1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Play Time] or [Repeat].
2. Use the ← or → button to select a setting.
3. Press the MENU button.
Red-Eye Correction Function

You can correct red eyes in recorded images.

Red eyes may not be automatically detected in some images or the results may not turn out as you intended. We recommend that you use [New File] to save corrected images.

Examples:
- Faces near the screen edges or faces that appear extremely small, large, dark or bright in relation to the overall image.
- Faces turned to the side or at a diagonal, or faces with a portion hidden.

1 Select [Red-Eye Correction].

1. Press the MENU button.
2. In the  menu, use the  or  button to select .
3. Press the  button.

2 Select an image.

1. Use the  or  button to select the image you wish to correct red eyes.
2. Press the  button.

- A frame will automatically display where red-eye is detected.
- If red-eye is not automatically detected, select [Add Frame] with the  or  button and press FUNC./SET button (p. 188).
- To cancel the correction frame, select [Remove Frame] and press the FUNC./SET button (p. 189).
3 **Correct the image.**
   1. Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to select [Start].
   2. Press the FUNC button.

4 **Save the image.**
   1. Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to select [New File] or [Overwrite].
   2. Press the FUNC button.
   - [New File]: Saved as new file with a new name. The uncorrected image is stored. The new image is stored as the last file.
   - [Overwrite]: Saved with the same file name as the uncorrected image. The uncorrected image is erased.
   - When [New File] is selected, proceed to Step 5.
   - If you wish to continue correcting another image, repeat operations from Step 2.

5 **Display the saved image.**
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. Use the ← or → button to select [Yes].
   3. Press the FUNC button.
   - Selecting [No] returns to the Play menu.
- Red-eye correction cannot be performed on and RAW images. When shooting in [Record RAW + ], red-eye correction can be performed on the JPEG image, but the original image cannot be overwritten.
- Overwriting cannot be performed on protected images.
- When there is not enough space left on the memory card, red-eye correction cannot be performed.

- Although you can apply red-eye correction any number of times to an image, the image quality will gradually deteriorate with each application.
- Since the correction frame will not appear automatically on images that have already been corrected once with the Red-Eye Correction function, use the [Add Frame] option to correct them.
Add Correction Frame

1 Select [Add Frame].
   1. Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to select [Add Frame].
   2. Press the FUNC. button.
      • A green frame will display.

2 Adjust the position of the correction frame.
   1. Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to move the frame.
      • Size of the frame can be changed with the zoom lever.

3 Add additional correction frames.
   1. Press the FUNC. button.
      • A correction frame is added and the frame color changes to white.
      • If you wish to add additional frames, adjust the position and press the FUNC./SET button.
      • Up to 35 frames can be added.
      • To end the adding of correction frames, press the MENU button.

To correctly perform red-eye correction, take note of the following (refer to the image in Step 2):
- Adjust the correction frame size so that it only surrounds the red-eye portion to be corrected.
- When there are several subjects with red-eye, be sure to add one correction frame per subject.
### Removing Correction Frames

1. **Select [Remove Frame].**
   - Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to select [Remove Frame].
   - Press the **func** button.

2. **Select a frame you wish to remove.**
   - Use the ← or → button to select a frame to remove.
   - The selected frame will appear in green.

3. **Delete the frame.**
   - Press the **func** button.
   - The selected frame will disappear.
   - To continue deleting frames, repeat operations from Step 2.
   - When you finish deleting frames, press the **MENU** button.
**Brightening Dark Areas (i-Contrast)**

You can automatically detect and brighten dark areas in an image, and then save it as a new image.

1. **Select [i-Contrast].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the menu, use the ▲ or ▼ button to select .
   3. Press the **SET** button.

2. **Select the image to brighten.**
   1. Use the ▼ or ▲ button to select an image.
   2. Press the **FUNC** button.

3. **Select the brightness compensation level.**
   1. Use the ▼ or ▲ button to select the option.
   2. Press the **SET** button.

   • If you are not satisfied with the results of [Auto], select [Low], [Medium], or [High].
4 Save the image.
   1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
   2. Press the FUNC. button.

   • If you wish to continue compensating of another image, repeat operations from Step 2.

5 Display the saved image.
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. Use the ← or → button to select [Yes].
   3. Press the FUNC. button.

   • Selecting [No] returns to the Play menu.

⚠️ Depending on the image, the picture quality may drop and the compensation results may not be as expected.

   • You can perform brightness compensation an unlimited number of times, but the picture quality may drop.

   • You cannot perform brightness compensation on RAW images.
Adding Effects with the My Colors Function

You can add effects to recorded images (stills only) using the My Colors function. The following selection of My Colors effects is available. For details, see p. 144.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vivid Lighter Skin Tone</td>
<td>Lighter Skin Tone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Darker Skin Tone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepia</td>
<td>Vivid Blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B/W</td>
<td>Vivid Green</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive Film</td>
<td>Vivid Red</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Select [My Colors].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the **menu**, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [ ].
   3. Press the **button**.

2. **Select an image.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select an image.
   2. Press the **button**.
3 **Select a My Colors type.**

1. Use the ← or → button to select the My Colors type.
   - The displayed image will reflect the My Colors effect.
   - You can press the zoom lever toward Q to check the image at a higher magnification. While the image is zoomed, you can press the FUNC./SET button to switch between the image transformed with the My Colors effect and the original non-transformed image.
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.

4 **Save the image.**

1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
   - The newly saved image transformed with the My Colors effect will be the last one in the list.
   - To continue adding effects to other images, repeat the procedures from Step 2 onward.

5 **Display the saved image.**

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Use the ← or → button to select [Yes].
3. Press the FUNC./SET button.
   - Selecting [No] returns to the Play menu.

---

- You cannot add effects to RAW images using the My Colors function.
- When there is not enough space left on the memory card, the My Colors effects cannot be added.
• Although My Colors effects can be added any number of times to an image, the image quality will gradually deteriorate with each application and the intended colors may not be achieved.

• Color in images taken using My Colors (p. 144) in shooting mode and images edited with the My Colors function in playback mode may differ slightly.

### Resizing Images

You can resave images that were recorded at high recording pixel settings at lower settings. Selectable recording pixel settings depend on the aspect ratio set when shooting (p. 80).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4:3</th>
<th>16:9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M8</td>
<td>1600 × 1200 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>640 × 480 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XS</td>
<td>320 × 240 pixels</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1 Select [Resize].

1. Press the MENU button.
2. In the menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select .
3. Press the button.

#### 2 Select an image.

1. Use the ← or → button to select an image to resize.
2. Press the button.

• You cannot select the images that cannot be resized by pressing the FUNC./SET button.
3 **Select a resolution.**
1. Use the \(<\) or \(>\) button to select a resolution.
2. Press the \(\text{FUNC}\) button.
   - If a resolution cannot be selected due to a lack of free space on the memory card, \(\times\) will display.

4 **Save the image.**
1. Use the \(<\) or \(>\) button to select [OK].
2. Press the \(\text{FUNC}\) button.
   - The resized image will be saved in a new file. The original image will remain.
   - If you wish to continue resizing of another image, repeat operations from Step 2.

5 **Display the saved image.**
1. Press the \(\text{MENU}\) button.
2. Use the \(<\) or \(>\) button to select [Yes].
3. Press the \(\text{FUNC}\) button.
   - Selecting [No] returns to the Play menu.

⚠️ Images shot in \(\text{SW}\) or \(\text{RAW}\) mode cannot be resized.
Attaching Sound Memos to Images

In playback mode, you can attach sound memos (up to 1 min.) to an image. The sound data is saved in the WAVE format (stereo).

1. Press the button while playing back images.
   • The sound memo control panel will display.

2. Record.
   1. Use the or button to select .
   2. Press the button.
      • The elapsed time and the remaining time display.
      • Pressing the FUNC./SET button pauses the recording. Pressing it again resumes recording.
      • Up to 1 minute of recordings can be added to any one image.
      • The sound mode can be changed (p. 95).
      • Press the button to stop the recording session.

Sound Memo Panel

Use the or button to select and press the FUNC./SET button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>☐ Exit</td>
<td>Returns to the playback screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Record</td>
<td>Starts recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Pause</td>
<td>Pauses recording or playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>Begins playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Erase</td>
<td>Erases sound memos. (Select [Erase] and in the confirmation screen press the FUNC./SET button.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You cannot attach sound memos to ☐.
- Sound memos for protected images cannot be erased.
Sound-Only Recording (Sound Recorder)

You can record sound only, without images, for up to two hours at one time.

1. **Select [Sound Recorder].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select .
   3. Press the **FUNCTION/SET** button.

2. **Record a sound.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select .
   2. Press the **FUNCTION/SET** button.

   • Recording time will be displayed.
   • When pressing the **FUNCTION/SET** button, recording will pause. Pressing the button once again will resume recording.
   • Pressing the shutter button halfway or pressing the movie button will stop sound recording and switch the camera to shooting mode.
   • The sound mode can be changed (p. 95).
   • The sample rate is fixed at 44.100 kHz.
Sound Recorder Panel

Use the ← or → button to select an option and press the FUNC./SET button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>⏹ Exit</td>
<td>Returns to the menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⏰ Record</td>
<td>Starts recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✸ Pause</td>
<td>Stops recording, playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▶ Play</td>
<td>Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a sound to play and press the FUNC./SET button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⏹ Rewind</td>
<td>Holding down the FUNC./SET button rewinds. The sound cannot be heard while rewinding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✸ Fast Forward</td>
<td>Holding down the FUNC./SET button fast forwards. The sound cannot be heard while fast forwarding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✧ Erase</td>
<td>Use the ↑, ↓, ← or → button to select [Erase] or [Erase all] in the confirmation screen and press the FUNC./SET button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✷ Protect</td>
<td>Protects against accidental erasure. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a sound and the FUNC./SET button to select/deselect protection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>♤ Volume</td>
<td>You can use the ↑ or ↓ button to adjust the volume.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Make sure [Audio] settings are correct (p. 95) before recording.

- See Sound Recorder Data Rates and Recording Durations (Estimated) (p. 288).
- When the memory cards fills, recording will automatically stop.
- If you press and hold the button during playback, the screen in Step 2 will display (briefly pressing the button will bring up the sound memo panel (p. 196)).
## Protecting Images

You can protect important images and movies from accidental erasure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select</th>
<th>You can configure the protection settings for each image singly while viewing them.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Range</td>
<td>You can select a first and last image and protect all the images in the range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Date</td>
<td>You can protect the images from a specified date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Category</td>
<td>You can protect the images in a specified category.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Folder</td>
<td>You can protect the images in a specified folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Images</td>
<td>You can protect all the images on a memory card.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Select [Protect].
1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. In the **PLAY** menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select **Protect**.
3. Press the **SET** button.

### 2 Choose a selection method.
1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to choose a selection method.
   - Pressing the **MENU** button returns to the prior screen.
2. Press the **SET** button.
[Select]

3 **Protect the image.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select an image to protect.
   2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
      • Pressing the FUNC./SET button again cancels the setting.
      • To continue protecting other images, repeat the procedure.
      • You can also protect images in the index playback mode.
      • Press the MENU button to complete the setting.

[Select Range]

3 **Select the first image.**
   • You can use the control dial to select the first or last image.
   1. Press the FUNC. button.
   2. Use the ← or → button to select the first image in the range to protect.
   3. Press the FUNC. button.
4 Select the last image.

1. Use the ➔ button to switch to selecting the last image.
2. Press the \( \text{FUNC/SET} \) button.
3. Use the ◀ or ➔ button to select the last image in the range.
4. Press the \( \text{FUNC/SET} \) button.

- An image with a lower number than the first image cannot be selected as the last image.
- Up to 500 images can be selected.

5 Protect the images.

1. Press the ◀ button to select [Protect].
2. Press the \( \text{FUNC/SET} \) button.

- The screen will return to the selection method screen.
- Selecting [Unlock] cancels selection of the protected image.
[Select by Date]/[Select by Category]/[Select by Folder]

3 Select the images.
1. Use the ▲ or ▼ button to select a date/category/folder to protect.
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
   • A ✓ will appear on selected images.
   • Pressing the FUNC./SET button again cancels the setting.
   • If a portion of the images are already protected, □ appears gray.
   • You can select multiple dates, categories or folders.
   • Use the ▲ or ▼ button to confirm each date, category or folder image.
3. Press the MENU button.

4 Protect the images.
1. Use the ▲ or ▼ button to select [Protect].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
   • Returns to the selection method screen.
   • Selecting [Unlock] removes protection for the selected images.
   • Selecting [Stop] cancels protection settings for the current selection.
### Protect the images.

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Protect].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.

- Returns to the selection method screen.
- Selecting [Unlock] removes protection for all the images.
- Selecting [Stop] cancels protection settings for the current selection.

You may cancel the operation by pressing the FUNC./SET button during [Protect] mode.

### Erasing Images

You can erase images from a memory card.

- Note that erased images cannot be recovered. Exercise adequate caution before erasing an image.
- Protected images cannot be erased with this function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select</th>
<th>Erase images after selecting them one at a time.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Range</td>
<td>For picking a first and last image and erasing all the images in the range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Date</td>
<td>Erases images corresponding to the selected date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Category</td>
<td>Erases images in the selected category.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Folder</td>
<td>Erases images in the selected folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Images</td>
<td>Erases all images on a memory card.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Select [Erase].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. In the menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Erase].
   3. Press the **SET** button.

2. **Select an erasure method.**
   1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select an erasure method.
      - Pressing the **MENU** button returns to the prior screen.
   2. Press the **SET** button.

3. **Select the image.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select an image to erase.
   2. Press the **SET** button.
      - Pressing the **FUNC./SET** button again deselects the setting.
      - This also can be set in the index playback mode.
   3. Press the **MENU** button.
4 Erase the image.
1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
2. Press the FUNC. button.

- Selecting [Stop] cancels selection of the image you are about to erase and returns to Step 2.

[Select Range]

3 Select the first image.
- You can use the control dial to select the first or last image.

1. Press the FUNC. button.

2. Use the ← or → button to select the first image in the range to erase.
3. Press the FUNC. button.
4 **Select the last image.**

1. Use the ➔ button to switch to selecting the last image.
2. Press the FUNC button.

3. Use the ◀️ or ➔ button to select the last image in the range.
4. Press the FUNC button.

- An image with a lower number than the first image cannot be selected as the last image.
- Up to 500 images can be selected.

5 **Erase the images.**

1. Press the ◀️ button to select [Erase].
2. Press the FUNC button.

- Pressing the MENU button cancels selection of the image you are about to erase and returns to Step 2.
Select the images.
1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a date/category/folder to erase.
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
   • A ✓ will appear on selected images.
   • Pressing the FUNC./SET button again cancels the setting.
   • You can select multiple dates, categories or folders.
   • Use the ← or → button to confirm each date, category or folder image.
3. Press the MENU button.

Erase the images.
1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
   • Selecting [Stop] cancels selection of the image you are about to erase and returns to Step 2.
3 Erase the images.

1. Use the ◀ or ▶ button to select [OK].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.

- Selecting [Cancel] cancels selection of the image you are about to erase and returns to Step 2.

- Pressing the FUNC./SET button while erasing is in progress cancels the procedure.
- Please format the memory card when you want to erase not only image data but also all the data contained on the memory card (pp. 16, 223).
You can also use the control dial to select images and perform various operations. See p. 43.

**Setting the DPOF Print Settings**

You can select images on a memory card for printing and specify the number of print copies in advance using the camera. The settings used on the camera comply with the Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) standards. This is extremely convenient for printing on a direct print compatible printer, or for sending the images to a photo developing service that supports DPOF.

- The specified print settings are also applied to the Print List (p. 23).
- The output of some printers or photo developing services may not reflect the specified print settings.
- Print settings cannot be set for 📒.
- The ⚠ icon may display for a memory card with print settings set by a different DPOF-compliant camera. These settings will be overwritten by those set by your camera.

**Setting the Print Style**

After setting the print style, select the images for printing. The following settings can be selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Print Type</th>
<th>Standard*</th>
<th>Prints one image per page.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index</td>
<td>Prints the selected images together at a reduced size in an index format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Prints the images in both the standard and index formats.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date (On/Off*)</td>
<td>Adds the date to the print.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File No. (On/Off*)</td>
<td>Adds the file number to the print.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear DPOF data (On*/Off)</td>
<td>Clears all print settings after the images print.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Select [Print Settings].
   1. Press the \( \text{\textbullet} \) button.
   2. Press the MENU button.
   3. Use the ← or → button to select the \( \text{\textbullet} \) menu.
   4. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Print Settings].
   5. Press the \( \text{\textbullet} \) button.

2 Make settings.
   1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select an option.
   2. Use the ← or → button to specify the settings.
   3. Press the MENU button.

- The Date and File No. settings change according to the Print Type as follows.
  - [Index]:
    [Date] and [File No.] cannot be set to [On] at the same time.
  - [Standard] or [Both]:
    [Date] and [File No.] can be set to [On] at the same time, however, the printable information may vary between printers.
- Dates print in the style specified in [Date/Time] in the \( \text{\textbullet} \) menu (p. 14).
**Single Images**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select Images &amp; Qty.</th>
<th>Configures print settings for single images as you view them.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Select Range</td>
<td>For picking a first and last image and printing all the images in the range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Date</td>
<td>Configures print settings for images corresponding to the selected date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Category</td>
<td>Configures print settings for images in the selected category.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select by Folder</td>
<td>Configures print settings for images in the selected folder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select All Images</td>
<td>Configures print settings for all images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear All Selections</td>
<td>Removes all print settings from images.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only one copy will be printed for each selected image. With the [Select Images & Qty.] option, you can only set the number of copies to print when the [Print Type] option is set to [Standard] or [Both] (p. 209).

1. **Choose a selection method.**

   1. Press the button.
   2. Press the **MENU** button.
   3. Use the or button to select the menu.
   4. Use the or button to choose a selection method.
   5. Press the button.
[Select Images & Qty.]

2 Select the images.
Selection methods differ depending on the Print Type settings (p. 209).

Standard ( )/Both ( )
1. Use the ← or → button to select the images.
2. Press the button.
3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select the number of print copies (up to 99).
4. Press the MENU button.

Index ( )
1. Use the ← or → button to select the images.
2. Select and deselect with the button.
3. Press the MENU button.

• This also can be set in the index playback mode (12 images display).
[Select Range]

2 Select the first image.
- You can use the control dial to select the first or last image.

1. Press the \[FUNC\] button.
2. Use the \[\(<\) or \[\(\rangle\)] button to select the first image in the print range.
3. Press the \[FUNC\] button.

3 Select the last image.
1. Use the \[\(\rangle\)\] button to switch to selecting the last image.
2. Press the \[FUNC\] button.
3. Use the \[\(<\) or \[\(\rangle\)] button to select the last image in the range.
4. Press the \[FUNC\] button.

- An image with a lower number than the first image cannot be selected as the last image.
- Up to 500 images can be selected.
4 Configure the print settings.

1. Press the \( \downarrow \) button to select [Order].

2. Press the \( \text{FUNC.} \) button.

- The screen will return to the selection method screen.
- Pressing the \( \text{MENU} \) button cancels the print settings for the selected range of images.
[Select by Date]/[Select by Category]/[Select by Folder]

2 Select the images.
1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select a date/category/folder to print.
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
   • A ✓ will appear on selected images.
   • Pressing the FUNC./SET button again cancels the setting.
   • You can select multiple dates, categories or folders.
   • Use the ← or → button to confirm each date, category or folder image.
3. Press the MENU button.

3 Configure the print settings.
1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
   • The screen will return to the selection method screen.
   • Selecting [Stop] cancels print settings of the selected image.
**[Select All Images]**

2 **Configure the print settings.**

1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.

- The screen will return to the selection method screen.
- Selecting [Cancel] cancels print settings of the selected image.

---

**[Clear All Selections]**

2 **Deselect the images.**

1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
2. Press the FUNC./SET button.

- The screen will return to the selection method screen.
- Selecting [Cancel] cancels the operation.

---

- Images are printed in order according to the file number.
- A maximum of 998 images can be selected.
- When the camera is connected to a printer, the PRINT button will light blue. At this time, printing will begin after performing the following.
  1. Press the PRINT button.
  2. Confirm that [Print] is selected, then press the FUNC./SET button.
Setting the DPOF Transfer Settings

You can use the camera to specify settings for images before downloading to a computer. Refer to the *Software Starter Guide* for instructions on how to transfer images to your computer. The settings used on the camera comply with the DPOF standards.

The ! icon may display for a memory card with transfer settings set by a different DPOF-compliant camera. These settings will be overwritten by those set by your camera.

1. **Select [Transfer Order].**
   1. Press the button.
   2. Press the MENU button.
   3. In the menu, use the or button to select .
   4. Press the button.

2. **Select an order method.**
   1. Use the or button to select an order method.
      
      - Order : Select single images.
      - Mark all : Select all the images on a memory card.
   2. Press the button.

- Selecting [Reset] cancels all transfer order settings.
Single Images

3 Select an image to transfer.
   1. Use the ← or → button to select an image to transfer.
   2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
      • Pressing the FUNC./SET button again deselects the setting.
      • You can also select images in the index playback mode.
   3. Press the MENU button several times.

Mark all

3 Transfer images.
   1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
   2. Press the FUNC./SET button.
   3. Press the MENU button several times.

- Images are transferred in order according to the file number.
- A maximum of 998 images can be selected.
Configuring the Camera

Power Saving Function

This camera is equipped with a power saving function, which can automatically turn off the power or LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).

| Auto Power Down | When set to [On], the power will shut off in the following circumstances. Press the power button again to restore power.  
Shooting mode: Approximately 3 minutes after the last control is accessed on the camera.  
Playback mode or when connected to a printer: Approximately 5 minutes after the last control is accessed on the camera. |
| Display Off | In shooting mode, the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) automatically turns off after the selected time if no control is accessed, regardless of the [Auto Power Down] setting. Press any button other than the power button or change the camera orientation to turn the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) back on. |

1 Select [Power Saving].

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Use the or button to select the menu.
3. Use the or button to select [Power Saving].
4. Press the button.

2 Make settings.

1. Use the or button to select an option.
2. Use the or button to make settings.
3. Press the MENU button twice.
When traveling abroad, you can record images with local dates and times simply by switching the time zone setting if you pre-register the destination time zones. You can enjoy the convenience of not having to switch the Date/Time settings.

**Setting the World Clock**

When traveling abroad, you can record images with local dates and times simply by switching the time zone setting if you pre-register the destination time zones. You can enjoy the convenience of not having to switch the Date/Time settings.

### Setting the Home/World Time Zones

1. **Select [Time Zone].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. Use the ← or → button to select the **T** menu.
   3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Time Zone].
   4. Press the **FUNC./SET** button.

2. **Select  (Home).**
   1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select  
   2. Press the **FUNC./SET** button.

   - When using for the first time, confirm that the screen to the right appears, then press the **FUNC./SET** button.
Select an area as home.
1. Use the ← or → button to select a home time zone.
2. Press the button.
• To set the daylight saving option, use the ↑ or ↓ button to display ☀. The time will advance by 1 hour.

Select World. (World).
1. Use the ↓ button to select World.
2. Press the button.

Select a destination area.
1. Use the ← or → button to select a destination time zone.
2. Press the button.
• As in Step 3, you can set daylight saving time.
Switching to the Destination Time Zone

1. **Select [Time Zone].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. Use the ← or → button to select the [T] menu.
   3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Time Zone].
   4. Press the **FUNC./SET** button.

2. **Select ☐ (World).**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select ☐.
   2. Press the **MENU** button twice.

   - To change the destination time zone, use the **FUNC./SET** button.
   - When you switch to the destination time zone, ☐ will display.

---

If you do not select a home time zone beforehand, you cannot configure the destination time.

If you change the date and time when the World option is selected, the Home date and time will also change automatically.
Low Level Formatting Memory Cards

We recommend you select [Low Level Format] when you think that the recording/reading speed of a memory card has dropped.

Please note that formatting (initializing) a memory card erases all data (including protected images (p. 199) and sound data recorded with the sound recorder (p. 197)).

1. **Select [Format].**
   1. Press the **MENU** button.
   2. Use the \(<\) or \(>\) button to select the \(\updownarrow\) menu.
   3. Use the \(<\) or \(>\) button to select [Format].
   4. Press the **func./set** button.

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the \(\uparrow\) button to select [Low Level Format].
   2. Use the \(<\) or \(>\) button to add a check mark.
   3. Use the \(\uparrow\), \(\downarrow\), \(<\) or \(>\) button to select [OK].
   4. Press the **func./set** button.

- You can stop formatting a memory card by pressing the **func./set** button. You can still use a memory card without problem when formatting is halted, but its data will be erased.
- A low level format may require 2 to 3 minutes with some memory cards.
## Resetting the File Number

The images you shoot are automatically assigned file numbers. You can select how the file number is assigned.

| Continuous | A number one higher than the last one recorded is assigned to the next image. This is convenient for managing all your images together on a computer because you avoid file name duplication when changing folders or memory cards.*  
* When a blank memory card is used. If a memory card with recorded data is used, the 7-digit number for the last recorded folder and image is compared with the last one on the memory card, and the larger of the two is utilized as the basis for new images. |
|---|---|
| Auto Reset | The image and folder number are reset to the starting value (100-0001).* This is convenient for managing images on a folder-by-folder basis.  
* When a blank memory card is used. If a memory card with recorded data is used, the number following the 7-digit number for the last recorded folder and image on the memory card is utilized as the basis for new images. |

### 1. Select [File Numbering].

1. Press the **MENU** button.  
2. Use the ‹ or › button to select the **TI** menu.  
3. Use the ‹ or › button to select [File Numbering].

### 2. Make settings.

1. Use the ‹ or › button to select a file numbering setting.  
2. Press the **MENU** button.
**File and Folder Numbers**

Recorded images are assigned consecutive file numbers starting with 0001 and ranging up to 9999, while folders are assigned numbers starting with 100 and ranging up to 999. Up to 2000 images can be saved into a single folder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>New Folder Created</th>
<th>Memory Card Exchanged for Another</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Memory Card 1</td>
<td>Memory Card 1 Memory Card 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="#" alt="Folder Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="#" alt="Folder Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Images may be saved to a new folder when there is insufficient free space even if the total number of images in a folder is less than 2000 because the following types of images are always saved together into the same folder.
  - Images from continuous shooting
  - Self-timer images (Custom and FaceSelf-Timer)
  - Movies
  - Stitch Assist mode images
  - Focus Bracketing
  - AEB shooting
  - Still images shot in Color Accent/Color Swap mode with the [Save Original] category set to [On].

- Images cannot be played back when the folder numbers are duplicated or image numbers are duplicated within folders.
- Please refer to the *Software Starter Guide* for information regarding folder structures or image types.
Creating an Image Destination (Folder)

You can create a new folder at any time and the recorded images will be automatically saved to that folder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Create New Folder</th>
<th>Creates a new folder the next time you shoot images. To create an additional folder, insert the check mark again.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto Create</td>
<td>You can also specify a date and time if you wish to create a new folder using a shooting time after the specified date and time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating a Folder the Next Time You Shoot

1. **Select [Create Folder]**.
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. Use the or  button to select the  menu.
   3. Use the or  button to select [Create Folder].
   4. Press the  button.

2. **Make settings**.
   1. Use the or  button to check mark [Create New Folder].
   2. Press the MENU button.

- will be displayed on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) when shooting. The symbol will disappear from the screen when a new folder is created.
Setting the Day or Time for Automatic Folder Creation

1 **Select [Create Folder].**
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. Use the ← or → button to select the  menu.
   3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Create Folder].
   4. Press the FUNC./SET button.

2 **Make settings.**
   1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Auto Create] and the ← or → button to select a creation date.
   2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Time] and the ← or → button to select a time.
   3. Press the MENU button.

   •  displays in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) when the specified time arrives. The symbol will cease to display after the new folder is created.

Up to 2000 images can be saved into one folder. A new folder will automatically be created when you record more than 2000 images even if you are not creating new folders.
Setting the Auto Rotate Function

Your camera is equipped with an Intelligent Orientation sensor that detects the orientation of an image shot with the camera held vertically and automatically rotates it to the correct orientation when viewing it in the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).

1. **Select [Auto Rotate].**
   1. Press the \textit{MENU} button.
   2. Use the \textit{ or \textit{ button to select the \textit{ menu.
   3. Use the \textit{ or \textit{ button to select \textit{Auto Rotate}.}

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the \textit{ or \textit{ button to select \textit{On} or \textit{Off}.
   2. Press the \textit{MENU} button.

- When the Auto Rotate function is set to \textit{On} and the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) is set to the detailed display mode in the shooting mode, \textit{\textcircled{1}} (normal), \textit{\textcircled{2}} (right end is down) or \textit{\textcircled{3}} (left end is down) will appear in the display.

- This function may not operate correctly when the camera is pointed straight up or down. Check that the arrow \textit{\textcircled{1}} is pointing in the right direction and if it is not, then set the Auto Rotate function to \textit{Off}.
- Even if the Auto Rotate function is set to \textit{On}, the orientation of images downloaded to a computer will depend upon the software used to download the images.
- Movies with an aspect ratio of 16:9 cannot be rotated automatically.
When the camera is held vertically to shoot, the Intelligent Orientation sensor judges the upper end to be “up” and the lower end to be “down”. It then regulates the optimal white balance, exposure and focus for vertical photography. This function operates regardless of the on/off status of the Auto Rotate function.
Reseting Settings to Their Default Values

1 Select [Reset All].
1. Press the MENU button.
2. Use the ← or → button to select the  menu.
3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Reset All].
4. Press the  button.

2 Make settings.
1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
2. Press the  button.

- When returning the C registration contents to the default setting, turn the mode dial to C to operate.
- Settings cannot be reset when the camera is connected to a computer or to a printer.
- The following cannot be reset.
  - The shooting mode
  - The [Time Zone], [Date/Time], [Language] and [Video System] options in the  menu (p. 59)
  - White balance data recorded with the custom white balance function (p. 142)
  - Colors specified in the [Color Accent] (p. 147) or [Color Swap] (p. 149) mode
  - Newly added My Camera settings (p. 235)
Connecting to a TV

Shooting/Playback Using a TV

You can use the supplied Stereo Video Cable STV-250N to shoot or playback images using a TV.

1. Turn off the camera and the TV.

2. Connect the stereo/video cable to the camera’s A/V OUT terminal.
   - With your fingernail on the upper edge of the camera’s terminal cover, pull it forward to open it, and plug the Stereo/Video Cable in all the way.

3. Plug the other ends of the stereo/video cable to the VIDEO IN and AUDIO IN jacks on the TV.
   - To the Video IN Jack Plug (Yellow)
   - To the Audio IN Jack Plug (Left) (White)
   - To the Audio IN Jack Plug (Right) (Red)

4. Turn on the TV and switch it to Video mode.

5. Turn on the camera.

⚠️ Digital zoom is not available when the camera is connected to a TV.
The video output signal can be switched (NTSC or PAL) to accommodate different regional standards (p. 60). The default setting varies between regions.

- NTSC: Japan, U.S.A., Canada, Taiwan and others
- PAL: Europe, Asia (excluding Taiwan), Oceania and others

- If the video system is set incorrectly, the camera output may not display properly.
- High-definition TV can also be connected.
Connecting to a High-Definition TV Using the HDMI Cable (Sold Separately)

By using the HDMI Cable HTC-100 (sold separately), you can connect the camera to a high-definition TV and enhance your viewing experience.

1. Turn off the camera and the TV.

2. Connect the camera to the TV.

3. Turn on the TV and switch it to HDMI mode.

4. Turn on the camera.

Television display is not available in shooting mode.

Please refer to the operating instructions for the connected device as well.
Customizing the Camera (My Camera Settings)

You can also use the control dial to select images and perform various operations. See p. 43.

My Camera allows you to customize the start-up image and start-up, operation, self-timer and shutter sounds. You can change and register these settings, enabling you to customize the camera to suit your own tastes.

Changing My Camera Settings

1. **Select a menu item.**
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. Use the ← or → button to select the menu.
   3. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select menu item.

2. **Make settings.**
   1. Use the ← or → button to select contents you wish to set.
   2. Press the MENU button.

   - Select [Theme] in sub step 3 of Step 1 to set all to the same settings.

When [Shutter Sound] is set to 1, a shutter sound matching the shutter speed will play.
Registering My Camera Settings

Images recorded onto the memory card and newly recorded sounds can be added as My Camera settings to the 2 and 3 menu items. You can also use the supplied software to upload your computer’s images and sounds to the camera.

A computer is required to restore the My Camera settings to the defaults. Use the supplied software (ZoomBrowser EX/ ImageBrowser) to restore the default settings to the camera.

1 Select the menu item.
   1. Press the button.
   2. Press the MENU button.
   3. Use the or button to select the menu.
   4. Use the or button to select the menu item you wish to register.

2 Select 2 or 3.
   1. Use the or button to select 2 or 3.
   2. Press the DISP. button.

3 Make settings.
   [Start-up Image]
   1. Use the or button to select image to register.
   2. Press the button.
[Start-up Sound]/[Operation Sound]/[Self-timer Sound]/[Shutter Sound]
1. Use the ← or → button to select (Record).
2. Press the button.
3. After recording, use the ← or → button to select (Register Sound).
4. Press the button.
   • Recording will automatically stop when the recording time elapses.
   • To play it, select (Play).
   • To exit instead of registering, select (Exit).

4 Register the setting.
1. Use the ← or → button to select [OK].
2. Press the button.
   • To cancel registering, select [Cancel].

⚠️ The following cannot be registered as My Camera settings.
- Movies
- Sounds recorded with the sound memo function (p. 196)
- Sounds recorded with the Sound Recorder (p. 197)

⚠️ The prior setting is erased when a new My Camera setting is added.

See the supplied Software Starter Guide for more information on creating and adding to the My Camera data.
# Troubleshooting

- Camera (p. 237)
- When the power is turned on (p. 238)
- LCD monitor/Viewfinder (p. 238)
- Shooting (p. 240)
- Shooting movies (p. 244)
- Playback (p. 245)
- Battery (p. 245)
- TV monitor output (p. 246)
- Printing with a direct print compatible printer (p. 247)

## Camera

### Camera will not operate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power is not turned on.</td>
<td>Press the power button (p. 40).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory card slot cover or battery cover is open.</td>
<td>Confirm that the memory card slot cover or battery cover is securely closed (pp. 10, 12).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batteries are loaded in the wrong direction.</td>
<td>Reload the batteries in the correct direction (p. 10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batteries are not the right type.</td>
<td>Use only unused AA-size alkaline batteries or Canon AA-size NiMH batteries (p. 10).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Battery charge is low and the camera will not operate ("Change the batteries" message displays). | Replace the camera batteries with four unused or fully charged batteries (p. 10).  
Use the Compact Power Adapter CA-PS700 (sold separately) (pp. 34, 269). |
| Poor contact between camera and battery terminals.                  | Poor contact between camera and battery terminals.                      |
|                                                                      | Reload the batteries several times.                                     |
### Sounds come from the camera interior.

| The camera's orientation was changed. | The camera orientation detection mechanism is operating. If the camera is turned off, the sound may also be that of the internal lens moving. This is not a malfunction. |

### When the power is turned on

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>“Card locked!” message appears.</th>
<th>When recording to, erasing from or formatting the memory card, slide the write protect tab upward (p. 259).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The SD memory card's or SDHC memory card's write protect tab is set to “Write protect”.</td>
<td>The Date/Time menu appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The SD memory card's or SDHC memory card's write protect tab is set to “Write protect”.</td>
<td>The lithium date battery charge is depleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The battery holder was removed.</td>
<td>The date and time settings need to be reset since they were lost (p. 14).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The Date/Time menu appears.

| The lithium date battery charge is depleted. | Replace the lithium date battery (p. 278). |

### LCD monitor/Viewfinder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nothing displays.</th>
<th>Press any button other than the power button or change the camera orientation to turn the LCD monitor back on (p. 219).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Power Saving] is set to [Display Off].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Troubleshooting

#### Camera screen is black at start-up.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Incompatible image has been selected as the startup image in the My Camera settings.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Change the start-up image in the My Camera settings (p. 234) or use the supplied software program ZoomBrowser EX or ImageBrowser to restore the default settings. See ZoomBrowser EX/ ImageBrowser Software User Guide (PDF).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Horizontal lines appear across the screen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display flickers when shot under fluorescent lighting.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Depending on the lighting during shooting, horizontal lines may appear in images. This is not a camera malfunction. (The lines are recorded in movies, but not in still images.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Images appear distorted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The subject was moving too quickly.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- This is related to the speed at which the image sensor is able to process signals, and is not a camera malfunction. (The distortion is recorded in movies, but not in still images.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 📷 appears.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A slow shutter speed has likely been selected because of insufficient lighting.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Set the IS Mode to any setting other than [Off] (p. 84).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Raise the ISO speed (p. 86).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Use the Auto ISO Shift (p. 87).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Set the flash to any setting other than 📷 (flash off) (p. 72).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Set the self-timer and secure the camera to something, such as a tripod (p. 75).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- If you have an externally mounted flash, attach it (p. 270).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**appears.**

This displays when using a memory card that has print settings or transfer settings set by other DPOF-compliant cameras.  

- These settings will be overwritten by those set by your camera (pp. 179, 209, 217).

**Noise displays./Subject’s movements are irregular.**

Camera automatically lightened the image displayed on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) to make it easier to see when shooting in a dark area (p. 64).

- There is no effect on the recorded image.

---

**Shooting**

**Camera will not record.**

- Switch to the shooting mode (p. 44).

- Switch to the shooting mode after disconnecting the interface cable in connecting to a computer/printer mode.

- When the flash is charged, the icon stops blinking and lights steadily on LCD monitor or the viewfinder. Shooting is now possible.

- Insert a new memory card (p. 11).

- If required, download the images to a computer and erase them from the memory card to make space.

- There is no effect on the recorded image.
### Troubleshooting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Memory card is not formatted correctly.</td>
<td>Format the memory card (pp. 16, 223).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If reformating does not work, the memory card logic circuits may be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>damaged. Consult the nearest Canon Customer Support Help Desk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD memory card or SDHC memory card is write protected.</td>
<td>Slide the write protect tab upward (p. 259).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Image is blurred or out of focus.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The camera moves when the shutter button is pressed.</td>
<td>Confirm the procedures in “[ ] appears” (p. 239).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-assist Beam is set to [Off].</td>
<td>In dark places where it is difficult for the camera to focus, the AF-assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Beam will emit to assist focusing. As the AF-assist Beam will not function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>when turned off, set it [On] to activate it (p. 55). Take care not to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>obstruct the AF-assist Beam with your hand when used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject is out of focal range.</td>
<td>Shoot with the subject at the correct focusing distance (p. 282).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The camera may be set to an unintended function (such as macro or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manual focus). Cancel the setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The subject is hard to focus on.</td>
<td>Use the focus lock, AF lock or manual focus to shoot (p. 127).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subject in recorded image is too dark.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient light for shooting.</td>
<td>Raise the built-in flash to [Flash on] (p. 72).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use a high-output externally mounted flash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The subject is underexposed because the surroundings are too bright.</td>
<td>Set the exposure compensation to a positive (+) setting (p. 136).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use the AE lock or spot metering functions (p. 139).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Subject is too far away for flash to reach. | Shoot within correct flash range of the subject when using the built-in flash (p. 283).  
Raise the ISO speed and then shoot (p. 86). |
|---|---|
| Subject in recorded image is too bright, or image flashes white. | Shoot within correct flash range of the subject when using the built-in flash (p. 283).  
Set the safety FE to [On] (p. 113). |
| Subject is too close, making the flash too strong. | Set the exposure compensation to a negative (–) setting (p. 136).  
Use the AE lock or spot metering functions (p. 139). |
| The subject is overexposed because the surroundings are too dark. | Change the shooting angle. |
| Too much light is shining directly into the camera, or is being reflected off the subject. | Push down the flash to (Flash off) (p. 72). |
| Flash is set to (Flash on). | |
| Image contains noise. | Higher ISO speeds and (High ISO Auto) setting may increase image noise. For higher image quality, use as low an ISO speed as possible (p. 86).  
In , , , and modes, or , , , , and modes in the SCN mode, or when using the Auto ISO Shift, the ISO speed increases and noise can appear. |
| ISO speed is too high. | |
### Troubleshooting

**White dots appear on the image.**

Light from the flash has reflected off dust particles or insects in the air. This is particularly noticeable when shooting using the wide angle or when you increase the aperture value in the aperture priority $\text{Av}$ mode.

- This is a phenomenon that occurs with digital cameras and does not constitute a malfunction.

**Eyes appear red.**

Light is reflected back from the eyes when the flash is used in dark areas.

- Shoot with [Red-Eye Lamp] in the [Flash Control] menu set to [On] (p. 112). For this mode to be effective, the subject must be looking right at the red-eye reduction lamp. Try asking them to look directly at the lamp. Even better results can be obtained by increasing the lighting in indoor settings or approaching closer to the subject.
- Set the [Red Eye Corr.] in the [Flash Control] menu to [On] (p. 112) and then shoot. The camera will automatically correct red eyes while shooting and record the image to the card.
- You can correct red eyes in recorded images using the [Red-Eye Correction] in the Playback menu (p. 185).

**Continuous shooting slows down.**

The memory card’s performance has dropped.

- To enhance the continuous shooting performance, you are recommended to low level format the memory card in the camera after you save all its images to your computer (p. 223).
### Recording images to memory card takes a long time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Memory card was formatted in another device.</td>
<td>Use a memory card formatted in your camera (pp. 16, 223).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Lens will not retract.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Memory card slot cover or battery cover was opened with power on.</td>
<td>After closing the memory card slot cover or battery cover, turn the power on then back off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Shooting movies

#### The recording time may not display properly or shooting may stop unexpectedly.

The following types of memory cards are used.

- Slow recording memory cards.
- Memory Cards formatted on a different camera or a computer.
- Memory Cards which have had images recorded and erased repeatedly.

Although the recording time may not display properly during shooting, the movie will be recorded correctly on the memory card. Recording time will display properly if you format the memory card in this camera (excluding slow recording memory cards) (pp. 16, 223).

#### “Buffer Warning” (p. 49) displays frequently on the LCD monitor.

When the camera’s internal memory is low. (The “Buffer Warning” displays until it is full, and shooting will automatically stop.)

Try the following procedures.

- Format the memory card with a low level format before filming (p. 223).
- Lower the recording pixels (p. 93).
- Use an SD memory card with Class 6 speed rating or higher.
# Playback

## Cannot play back.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You attempted to play back images shot with another camera or images edited with a computer.</th>
<th>Computer images that cannot be played back may play back if they are added to the camera using the supplied software program ZoomBrowser EX or ImageBrowser. See <em>ZoomBrowser EX/ImageBrowser Software User Guide (PDF)</em>.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File name was changed with a computer or file location was changed.</td>
<td>Set the file name or location on the file format/structure of the camera (refer to the <em>Software Starter Guide</em> for details).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Images cannot be edited.

Some images shot with another camera cannot be edited.

## Movies do not play back correctly.

Movies recorded with high recording pixels may momentarily stop playing if played on slow reading memory cards.

Movies shot with this camera may not play back properly on other cameras.

## Reading images from memory card is slow.

| Memory card was formatted in another device. | Use a memory card formatted in your camera (pp. 16, 223). |

# Battery

## Batteries consumed quickly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Batteries are not being used to their full capacity.</th>
<th>See <em>Battery</em> (p. 258).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Batteries are not the right type.</td>
<td>Use only unused AA-size alkaline batteries or Canon AA-size NiMH batteries (p. 258).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery capacity drops due to low ambient temperatures.</td>
<td>• If shooting in a cold location, warm the batteries such as by placing them in your pocket before using them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Battery terminals are dirty. | • Wipe the terminals well with a dry cloth before use.  
• Reload the batteries several times. |

**If using Canon AA-size NiMH batteries**

| As the batteries have not been used for over a year, their recharging capacity has decreased. | • Their charging performance should return to normal after fully recharging and depleting them over several times. |
| Battery life has been exceeded. | • Replace four batteries with new ones. |

**TV monitor output**

| Image is distorted or not showing on TV monitor. | • Set the video system to the appropriate setting, NTSC or PAL, for your TV (p. 60). |
| Incorrect video system setting. | • The output will not appear on a TV in Stitch Assist mode. Shoot in a different shooting mode (p. 108). |
| Shooting in Stitch Assist mode. | • Images cannot be output from the TV when connected via HDMI cable during shooting mode. Disconnect the HDMI cable, and connect using only a stereo video cable. |
| Shooting while connected via HDMI cable. |
## Printing with a direct print compatible printer

### Cannot print.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The camera and printer are not properly connected.</td>
<td>Securely connect the camera and printer with the specified cable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The printer power is not turned on.</td>
<td>Turn on the printer power.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The print connection method is not correct.</td>
<td>Select [Print Method] and select [Auto] (p. 60). When printing movies, see <em>Print Method</em> (p. 60) and <em>Operating the Movie Control Panel</em> (p. 171).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# List of Messages

The following messages may appear on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder) during shooting or playback. Please refer to the *Direct Print User Guide* for the messages that display during a printer connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Busy...</td>
<td>Image is being recorded onto the memory card, red eye correction is being processed. Resetting all the camera and menu settings to default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No memory card</td>
<td>You turned on the camera without a memory card installed, or with a memory card installed in the wrong orientation (p. 11).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Card locked!</td>
<td>The SD memory card or SDHC memory card is write protected (p. 259).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannot record!</td>
<td>You attempted to shoot an image without a memory card installed, with a memory card installed in the wrong orientation, or attempted to attach a sound memo to a movie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory card error</td>
<td>The memory card may be malfunctioning. By formatting the malfunctioning memory card with the camera, you may be able to continue using it (pp. 16, 223). However, if this error message continues to appear, contact your Canon Customer Support Help Desk as there may be a problem with the camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory card full</td>
<td>Memory card is full of images and no more can be recorded or saved. In addition, no more image settings, or sounds or sound memos can be recorded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Naming error!

The file name could not be created because there is an image with the same name as the folder that the camera is attempting to create, or the highest possible file number has already been reached. In the Set up menu, set [File Numbering] to [Auto Reset]; alternatively, save all the images you wish to retain onto a computer, then reformat the memory card. Please note that formatting will erase all the existing images and other data.

## Change the batteries.

Battery charge is insufficient to operate the camera. Replace the batteries immediately with unused AA-size alkaline batteries or fully charged Canon AA-size NiMH batteries. Also refer to *Battery* (p. 258).

## No image.

No images recorded on memory card.

## Image too large.

You attempted to play back an image larger than 5616 × 3744 pixels or with a large data size.

## Incompatible JPEG

You attempted to play back an incompatible JPEG image (edited with a computer, etc.).

## RAW

You attempted to play back a different type of RAW image.

## Unidentified Image

You attempted to play back an image with corrupted data, an image with a recording type specific to another manufacturer’s camera, or an image that has been downloaded to a computer and altered.

## Cannot magnify!

You attempted to magnify an image recorded in a different camera or data type, an image edited with a computer, or a movie.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Cannot rotate</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You attempted to rotate a movie with an aspect ratio of 16:9, an image taken with a different camera or data type, or an image/movie edited with a computer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Incompatible WAVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A sound memo cannot be added to this image since the data type of the existing sound memo is incorrect. You may also have attempted to play back sound recorder audio recorded at a sample rate other than 44.100 kHz. Audio playback is not available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Cannot register this image!</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You attempted to register an image recorded in a different camera, a RAW image or a movie as a start-up image.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Cannot modify image</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You attempted to add My Colors effects, apply red-eye correction, resize, or apply brightness correction to a movie, RAW image, or image taken with another camera. Or you attempted to resize an image already resized to (\times S) or an image shot in (\times W). Or, you attempted to trim an image recorded using (\times W), or a (S) or (\times S) image.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Cannot assign to category</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You attempted to categorize an image recorded in a different camera.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Cannot Modify</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cannot apply red-eye correction as no red-eye is detected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Cannot transfer!</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When transferring images to your computer using the Direct Transfer menu, an image with corrupted data, an image taken with a different camera or data type. You may have also attempted to select a movie or a RAW image when [Wallpaper] was selected in the Direct Transfer menu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Protected!</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You attempted to erase or edit a protected image, movie or sound memo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>List of Messages</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Too many marks</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Too many images have been marked with print settings, transfer settings or slide show image settings. Cannot process any more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cannot complete!</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could not save a part of the print, transfer or slide show settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unselectable image</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You attempted to set the print settings for a non-JPEG image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cannot select</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In selecting the image range for categorizing via the My Category function, protecting images, erasing images or specifying print settings, you selected a starting image with a file number higher than the last image or a last image with a file number lower than the starting image. Or, you specified more than 500 images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Communication error</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The computer was unable to download the image due to the large amount of images (approx. 1000) stored on the memory card. Use a USB card reader or a PCMCIA card adapter to download the images.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lens error, restart camera</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An error was detected while the lens was in motion, and the power has been automatically turned off. This error can occur if you hold the lens while it is in motion or you operate it in a location with excessive dust or sand in the air. Try turning the power back on, and resume shooting or playback. If this message continues to display, contact your Canon Customer Support Help Desk as there may be a problem with the lens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exx</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(xx: number) Camera detected an error. Turn the power off and then back on, then shoot or play back. A problem exists if the error code reappears. Note the number and contact your Canon Customer Support Help Desk. If an error code displays directly after taking a picture, the shot may not have been recorded. Check image in playback mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Before using the camera, please ensure that you read the safety precautions described below and in the “Safety Precautions” section. Always ensure that the camera is operated correctly.

The safety precautions noted on the following pages are intended to instruct you in the safe and correct operation of the camera and its accessories to prevent injuries or damage to yourself, other persons and equipment.

Equipment refers to the camera, battery, battery charger (sold separately) or compact power adapter (sold separately).

### Warnings

#### Equipment

- **Do not point the camera at bright light sources (the sun in bright clear skies, etc.).**
  - Doing so could damage the camera’s image sensor.

- **Store this equipment out of the reach of children and infants.**
  - Neck strap: Placement of the strap around the child’s neck could result in asphyxiation.
  - Memory card: It may be swallowed accidentally. If this occurs, contact a doctor immediately.
Do not attempt to disassemble or alter any part of the equipment that is not expressly described in this guide.

To avoid the risk of high-voltage electrical shock, do not touch the flash portion of the camera if it has been damaged.

Stop operating the equipment immediately if it emits smoke or noxious fumes.

Do not allow the equipment to come into contact with, or become immersed in, water or other liquids. If the exterior comes into contact with liquids or salt air, wipe it dry with a soft, absorbent cloth.

Continued use of the equipment may result in fire or electrical shock. Immediately turn the camera power off and remove the camera batteries or unplug the battery charger or compact power adapter from the power outlet. Please consult your camera distributor or the closest Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Do not use substances containing alcohol, benzine, thinners or other flammable substances to clean or maintain the equipment.

Do not cut, damage, alter or place heavy items on the power cord.

Use only recommended power accessories.

Remove the power cord on a regular periodic basis and wipe away the dust and dirt that collects on the plug, the exterior of the power outlet and the surrounding area.

Do not handle the power cord if your hands are wet.

Continued use of the equipment may result in fire or electrical shock.
**Battery**

- Do not place the batteries near a heat source or expose it to direct flame or heat.
- The batteries should not be immersed in water or sea water.
- Do not attempt to disassemble, alter or apply heat to the batteries.
- Avoid dropping or subjecting the batteries to severe impacts that could damage the casing.
- Use only recommended batteries and accessories.

Failure to follow these precautions may cause explosions or leaks, resulting in fire, injury and damage to the surroundings. In the event that a battery leaks and the eyes, mouth, skin or clothing contact these substances, immediately flush with water and seek medical assistance.

- Never use damaged batteries or batteries whose outer seal is completely or partially missing or peeled off, as there is risk that such batteries may leak, overheat, or burst. Always check the seals on store-bought batteries before loading them, as some batteries may come with defective seals. Do not use batteries with defective seals.
- Never use batteries that look like this.

- Batteries with all or part of the seal (electrical insulation sheath) peeled off.
- The positive electrode (plus terminal) is flat.
- The negative terminal is correctly formed (protruding from the metal base), but the seal does not extend up over the edge of the metal base.
• Disconnect the battery charger and compact power adapter from both the camera and the power outlet after recharging or when not in use to avoid fire and other hazards.

• Do not place anything, such as tablecloths, carpets, bedding or cushions, on top of the battery charger while it is charging. Leaving the units plugged in for a long period of time may cause them to overheat and distort, resulting in fire.

• When recharging the Canon AA-size NiMH batteries, use only a specified battery charger.

• The compact power adapter is designed for exclusive use with this equipment. Do not use it with other products. There is a risk of overheating and distortion which could result in fire or electrical shock.

• Before you discard a battery, cover the terminals with tape or other insulators to prevent direct contact with other objects. Contact with the metallic components of other materials in waste containers may lead to fire or explosions.

---

**Others**

• Do not trigger the flash in close proximity to human or animal eyes. Exposure to the intense light produced by the flash may damage eyesight.

In particular, remain at least one meter (39 inches) away from infants when using the flash.

• Keep objects that are sensitive to magnetic fields (such as credit cards) away from the speaker of the camera. Such items may lose data or stop working.
### Cautions

#### Equipment

- Do not get the camera caught on other objects or subject it to strong impacts or shocks when wearing or holding it by the neck strap.
- Be careful not to bump or strongly push the end of the lens. The above-mentioned could lead to injury or damage the equipment.
- Be careful not to allow dust or sand into the camera when using it at a beach or place with strong winds. Such conditions could lead to damage.
- Do not store the equipment in humid or dusty areas.
- During shooting, do not allow metal objects (such as pins or keys) or dirt to contact the charger terminals or plug. Such conditions could lead to fire, electrical shock or other damage.
- Avoid using, placing or storing the equipment in places subject to strong sunlight or high temperatures, such as the dashboard or trunk (boot) of a car.
- Do not use the equipment in a manner that exceeds the rated capacity of the electrical outlet or wiring accessories. Also, do not use the equipment if the cable or plug is damaged, or if the plug is not fully inserted into the power outlet.
- Do not use in locations with poor ventilation. The above-mentioned can cause leakage, overheating or explosion, resulting in fire, burns or other injuries. High temperatures may also cause deformation of the casing.
- When not using the camera for extended periods of time, remove the batteries from the camera and store the equipment in a safe place. If the batteries are left inside the camera, damage caused by leakage may occur.
- Do not connect compact power adapters or battery chargers to devices such as electrical transformers for foreign travel because it may lead to malfunctions, excessive heat generation, fire, electric shock or injury.
Appendix

Flash

- Do not operate the flash with dirt, dust or other items stuck to the surface of the flash.
- Be careful not to cover the flash with your fingers or clothing when shooting.

The flash may be damaged and emit smoke or noise. The resulting heat build-up could damage the flash.

- Do not touch the surface of the flash after taking several pictures in rapid succession.

Doing so could result in burns.
Preventing Malfunctions

**Camera**

**Avoid Strong Magnetic Fields**
- Never place the camera in close proximity to electric motors or other equipment generating strong electromagnetic fields.
Exposure to strong magnetic fields may cause malfunctions or corrupt image data.

**Avoid Condensation Related Problems**
- When moving the equipment rapidly from cold to hot temperatures, you can avoid condensation by placing the equipment in an airtight, resealable plastic bag and letting it adjust to temperature changes slowly before removing it from the bag.
If condensation forms on the camera, remove the memory card and batteries, and set the camera aside in room temperature to allow the condensation to naturally evaporate before using the camera again.

**Battery**
- This camera uses AA-size alkaline batteries or Canon AA-size NiMH batteries (sold separately).
While it is possible to use AA-size nickel-cadmium batteries, performance is unreliable and their use is not recommended.
- Since the performance of alkaline batteries may differ according to brand, the operating time of the batteries you purchase may not be as long as the batteries that came with the camera.
- When using the camera under low temperature conditions or over long periods, you are recommend to use Canon AA-size NiMH batteries (sold separately).
Camera operating time may shorten at low temperatures when alkaline batteries are used. Also due to their specifications, alkaline batteries may expire faster than NiMH batteries.
Never mix unused and partially used batteries. The partially used batteries may leak.

Do not install the batteries with their terminals (+ and -) reversed.

Do not mix batteries of different types or from different manufacturers.

Before installing the batteries, wipe the battery terminals well with a dry cloth. If the battery terminals are soiled with oil from one’s skin or other dirt, the number of recordable images may be considerably diminished, or the amount of time the camera can be used may be reduced.

At low temperatures, battery performance may be reduced and the low battery icon ( ) may appear earlier than usual. Under these conditions, restore the battery performance by warming it in a pocket immediately before use.

Do not put the batteries into a pocket together with metallic items such as a key ring. The batteries may be short circuited.

When not using the camera for long periods, remove the batteries from the camera and store them separately. If the batteries are left inside the camera, the camera may become damaged from battery leakage.

Memory Card

SD Memory Card or SDHC Memory Card Write Protect Tab

- Slide the tab up. (Writing/Erasing Possible)
- Slide the tab down (you can protect the images and other data on the memory card). (Writing/Erasing Impossible)
- Memory cards are high-precision electronic devices. Do not bend them, apply force to them, or subject them to shocks or vibration.
- Do not attempt to disassemble or alter the memory card.
- Do not allow dirt, water or foreign objects to contact the terminals on the back of the memory card. Do not touch the terminals with your hands or metal objects.
- Do not peel away the original label on the memory card or cover it with another label or sticker.
- When writing on the memory card, do not use a pencil or ballpoint pen. Only use a soft point pen (e.g. felt-tip pen).
- Do not use or store memory cards in the following locations.
  - Locations subject to dust or sand
  - Locations subject to high humidity and high temperatures
- Since some or all of the data recorded on the memory card may be corrupted or erased by electrical noise, static electricity, camera or memory card malfunction, making a backup copy of important data is recommended.
- Please note that formatting (initializing) a memory card erases all data, including protected images.
- You are recommended to use memory cards that have been formatted in your camera.
  - When the camera is malfunctioning, a corrupted memory card might be the cause. Reformatting the memory card may solve the problem.
  - Memory cards formatted in other cameras, computers, or peripheral devices may not operate correctly in this camera. When that happens, reformat the memory card with this camera.
- If formatting in the camera does not work properly, turn the camera off and re-insert the memory card. Then turn the camera back on and format again.
Be careful when transferring or disposing of a memory card. Formatting or erasing the data on a memory card merely changes the file management information on the memory card and does not ensure that its contents are completely deleted. When disposing of a memory card, take precautions, such as physically destroying the memory card, to prevent personal information leaks.

**LCD Monitor**

- When putting the camera in your bag, ensure that hard objects do not come into contact with the LCD monitor. If this occurs, it may cause malfunction or damage the LCD monitor.
- **Do not attach accessories to the strap.** Doing so may cause malfunction or damage the LCD monitor. When you are not using the camera, close the LCD monitor with the display facing inward (p. 13).
Using the Wireless Controller

Inserting the Battery

Install the battery (CR2025) into the Wireless Controller WL-DC300 before use.

Be particularly careful to keep the batteries out of the reach of children. Seek medical assistance immediately if a child swallows a battery since corrosive battery fluids could damage the stomach or intestinal wall.

1. Place your fingertip on (1) and press it in the direction of the arrow while placing another fingertip on (2) and removing the battery holder.

2. Place the battery in the battery holder with the positive terminal (+) facing up. Then replace the battery holder into the wireless controller.

Removing the Battery

To remove the battery, pull it in the direction of the arrow.
**Shooting / Playback**
You can use the wireless controller for shooting and playback.

![Diagram of camera with remote sensor and transmitter](image)

You can attach a strap to this hole.

**Shooting Mode**

1. **Select  
   1. Press the ** button.**
   2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select .**
2 Set the delay time for shooting.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. In the [ ] menu, use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Drive Settings].
3. Press the button.
4. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select [Wireless Delay].
5. Use the ← or → button to make settings.
   - [0 sec.]: The shutter releases at the same time you press the shutter button on the remote control.
   - [2 sec.]: The self-timer sound beeps quickly when you press the shutter button on the remote control, the self-timer lamp blinks, and the shutter releases 2 seconds later.
   - [10 sec.]: 2 seconds before the shutter releases, the self-timer sound and lamp speed up.
6. Press the button.
7. Press the MENU button.

3 Shoot using the wireless controller.

1. Compose the image using the zoom buttons (1).
2. Press the shutter button to shoot (2).

- When you press the DISP. button (3), the display changes (p. 62) according to the [Custom Display] setting (p. 65). The DISP. button can only be used for switching between LCD monitor and viewfinder display.
- Only buttons (1) to (3) are used in shooting mode.

To Cancel the Wireless Delay:
Follow Step 1 to select [ ].
**Playback Mode**

Display images in sets of 12 (index playback).

![Diagram of remote controller with buttons labeled: DISP.,FUNC./SET, MENU, ↑/↓/←/→, Buttons]

- Magnify the display with each press (up to about 10x).
- Change the information display with each press.

The operable range of the wireless controller will shorten under the following circumstances.
- When the wireless controller is used at an angle to the remote sensor.
- When strong light strikes the camera.
- When the battery is weak.

When you fix the camera to a tripod and shoot still images, aim the remote controller’s transmitter at remote sensor (p. 263) to operate the camera from the side without touching the camera. This prevents camera shake when shooting just like using a remote release. In such cases, we recommend setting [Wireless Delay] to [0 sec.] under [Drive Settings] in the Rec. menu.
Attaching the Lens Hood

When shooting a wide-angle photo that is backlit without using a flash, we recommend attaching the LH-DC50 Lens Hood to reduce the amount of light entering the lens.

1. Align the notch (■) on the lens hood with the mark on the camera, and turn the lens hood in the direction of the arrow until locked.

- Turn the lens hood in the opposite direction to remove it.

If you use the built-in flash with the lens hood attached, portions of the image may appear darker.

When not in use, remove the lens hood and reattach it to the camera as shown.
Using the Power Kits (Sold Separately)

Using Rechargeable Batteries (Battery and Charger Kit CBK4-300)

This kit includes a battery charger and four rechargeable AA-size NiMH (nickel metal hydride) batteries. Charge batteries as shown below.

- After inserting the batteries, plug the charger (CB-5AH) into an outlet, or attach the power cord to the charger (CB-5AHE, not shown) and plug the other end into an outlet.
- Do not insert and charge additional batteries once charging has begun.
- The charge indicator blinks while charging, then remains lit when charging is finished.

⚠️ The CB-5AH/CB-5AHE battery charger can only be used to charge Canon AA-size NiMH batteries NB-3AH.

- Do not mix batteries with different purchase dates or different charge states. When recharging batteries, always recharge all four of them at the same time.
- Do not attempt to recharge fully charged batteries, as doing so may reduce or impair battery performance. Also, do not charge batteries for more than 24 consecutive hours.
- Do not recharge batteries in enclosed areas that tend to retain heat.
Do not recharge the batteries until the LCD monitor displays the “Change the batteries” message. Repeatedly recharging batteries before they become depleted may cause batteries to lose capacity.

- Wipe the battery terminals well with a dry cloth in the following situations, as the terminals may be soiled with oil from one’s skin or other dirt:
  - If the battery usage time has considerably diminished
  - If the number of recordable images has considerably diminished
  - When charging the batteries (insert and remove the batteries two or three times before charging)
  - When charging completes in a space of a few minutes (the battery charger indicator remains lit)

- You may not be able to fully charge the batteries due to their specifications right after purchase or after long periods of nonuse. If this happens, after fully charging them, use the batteries until their charge is depleted. After doing this several times, battery performance will be restored.

- If you store batteries for a long period of time (about 1 year), it is recommended that you deplete the batteries in the camera and to then store them at room temperature (0 to 30 °C/32 to 90 °F) in low humidity. Storing them in a fully charged condition can shorten their lifespan or degrade their performance. Again, if you do not use batteries for more than 1 year, fully charge them once a year and deplete them in the camera before storing them.

- If the battery usage time has become considerably low despite wiping the terminals and charging them until the battery charger indicator remains lit, this may indicate that the batteries have reached the end of their lifespan. Replace them with new batteries. If you are purchasing new batteries, look for Canon AA-size NiMH batteries.

- Leaving batteries in the camera or charger may result in damage from battery leakage. When not in use, remove the batteries from the camera or charger and store them in a cool, dry location.
It takes approximately 4 hours 40 minutes for the charger to fully recharge the batteries after they have been depleted. Charge batteries in an environment where the temperature is in the range of 0 to 35 °C (32 to 95 °F).

- The charging time varies according to the ambient temperature and to the battery charge state.
- The battery charger may emit noise while charging. This is not a malfunction.

**Using the AC Power Adapter CA-PS700**

It is best to power the camera with Power Adapter CA-PS700 (sold separately) when you are using it for long periods of time or connecting it to a computer.

**CAUTION** Turn the camera power off before connecting or disconnecting the compact power adapter.

1. **Connect the power cord to the compact power adapter first and then plug the other end into the power outlet.**

2. **Slip your fingernail under the upper end of the terminal cover, and connect the DC plug of the compact power adapter to the camera’s DC IN terminal.**
Using an Externally Mounted Flash (Sold Separately)

You can make your flash photography even clearer and more natural appearing with the use of a separately sold externally mounted flash. The camera’s auto exposure function will operate with a Canon Speedlite 220EX, 430EX II or 580EX II (except with the M mode or when [Flash Mode] is set to [Manual]). Other flashes may fire manually or not fire at all.

Please check the manual for your flash.

You are recommended to set the white balance to .

* Certain functions noted in the manuals for the Canon Speedlite 220EX, 430EX II and 580EX II cannot be performed when mounted on this camera. Please read this guide before using one of these flashes on the camera.

** Attaching the Externally Mounted Flash

1. Attach the flash to the camera’s hot shoe.
2 Turn the external flash on and turn the camera on.
   • (red) appears on the LCD monitor (or the viewfinder).

3 Turn the mode dial to the desired mode.
   • Speedlite 220EX*
     • The maximum flash synchro shutter speed is 1/250 second.
     • The flash will automatically adjust its output when [Flash Mode] is set to [Auto].
     • When [Flash Mode] is set to [Auto] the flash exposure compensation can be adjusted. When [Flash Mode] is set to [Manual], the flash output can be adjusted (p. 112).
     • In M mode or when [Flash Mode] is set to [Manual], the output of an externally mounted flash can be adjusted in the flash output adjustment screen (p. 112). For the optimal aperture values and ISO speeds for the distance to the subject, refer to the guide number listed in the flash’s user guide (adjustment can be made on the camera only).
       You can also adjust the flash output even when the camera is set to the E-TTL automatic flash exposure compensation mode by changing the flash exposure compensation setting.

* You can also use the 380EX, 420EX, 430EX, 550EX and 580EX.
• **Speedlite 430EX II and 580EX II**
  - The maximum flash synchro shutter speed is 1/250 second.
  - The flash will automatically adjust its output when [Flash Mode] is set to [Auto].
  - When [Flash Mode] is set to [Auto] the flash exposure compensation can be adjusted. When [Flash Mode] is set to [Manual], the flash output can be adjusted (p. 112).
  - In **M** mode or when [Flash Mode] is set to [Manual], the output of an externally mounted flash can be adjusted in the flash output adjustment screen (p. 112). You can also adjust the flash output from the flash (the flash setting overrides the camera setting when both are set). For the optimal aperture values and ISO speeds for the distance to the subject, refer to the guide number listed in the flash’s user guide.
  - You can also adjust the flash output even when the camera is set to the E-TTL automatic flash exposure compensation mode by changing the flash exposure compensation setting.
  - In **M** mode, you can set the flash output with the camera even if the flash unit is set to E-TTL automatic flash exposure compensation. [E-TTL] will display on the flash, but the flash will fire manually.

• **Other Canon Flashes (other than Speedlite EX series)**
  - Since other flashes fire at full strength, set the shutter speed and aperture accordingly.

4 **Press the shutter button halfway.**
   - The flash is charged when its pilot lamp lights up.

5 **Press the shutter button all the way to shoot the image.**
Setting the Externally Mounted Flash

1. **Display the Flash Settings screen.**

   1. Hold the button down for more than one second.

   • Before making flash settings, mount the external flash and turn the flash on.
   • You can also set in [Flash Control] in the menu.

   ![External Flash Settings](image.png)
Make settings.

1. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select the items you wish to set.
2. Use the ← or → button to set the item.
3. Press the MENU button.

- The available settings will vary depending on the flash in use.
  For details on settings, refer to the user guide included with your flash or Speedlite Transmitter.

### Speedlite 220EX Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Shooting mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Mode</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>o*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Exp.Comp 1)</td>
<td>–3 to +3</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Output 2)</td>
<td>1/64 to 1/1 (in 1/3 steps)</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter Sync.</td>
<td>1st-curtain</td>
<td>o*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd-curtain</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow Synchro</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>o*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Corr.</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>o*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Lamp</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>o*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety FE 1)</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>o*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* : Default setting.

: Settings are retained even when the camera power is turned off.

1) This can be set when [Flash Mode] is set to [Auto].
2) This can be set when [Flash Mode] is set to [Manual].
### Speedlite 430EX II/580EX II Settings

* : Default setting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Options</th>
<th>Shooting mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Mode 1)</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>O*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Exp. Comp 1) 2)</td>
<td>–3 to +3</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Output 1) 3)</td>
<td>1/128 4) to 1/1 (in 1/3 steps)</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter Sync. 1)</td>
<td>1st-curtain</td>
<td>O*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2nd-curtain</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hi-speed</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow Synchro</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>O*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>O*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless Func. 1) 5)</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>O*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Corr.</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>O*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Lamp</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>O*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety FE 2)</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>O*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear Flash Settings 6)</td>
<td>Resets the settings to their default values.</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

: Settings are retained even when the camera power is turned off.

1) The settings from the flash are applied when you turn on the camera.
2) This can be set when [Flash Mode] is set to [Auto].
3) This can be set when [Flash Mode] is set to [Manual].
4) When using Speedlite 430EX II, 1/64 will be set.
5) Only [On] and [Off] can be set with the camera, and further settings are made with the flash (cannot be set with Speedlite 430EX II).
6) [Slow Synchro], [Safety FE], [Red-Eye Corr.] and [Red-Eye Lamp] can also be returned to their default values using [Reset All] in the camera’s menu (p. 230).
• [Flash Control] will not display when the flash is turned off. Before making flash settings, turn the flash on.
• When an external flash is mounted, you cannot make built-in flash settings.
• When adjusting flash exposure compensation with the camera, set the external flash’s exposure compensation to [+0].
• If the external flash has been set to stroboscopic flash, the flash’s set up menu cannot be selected (580EX II only).
• When [Wireless Func.] is set to [On], [Shutter Sync.] cannot be set to [2nd-curtain]. Even if you set [Shutter Sync.] to [2nd-curtain] with the camera, it will change to [1st-curtain].
• For continuous shooting, the flash can be in quick flash mode (pilot lamp lit green). In this case, light emission may be smaller than with full flash (pilot lamp lit red).
• The focus bracketing mode and the AEB mode cannot be used for flash photography. If the flash fires, only one image gets recorded.
• Flashes (especially high-voltage flashes) or flash accessories made by other manufacturers may override certain camera functions or cause a camera malfunction.
The following functions can be used with a Speedlite 220EX, 430EX II or 580EX II*.
- Auto Exposure (Use the E-TTL mode with a 430EX II or 580EX II)
- FE Lock (Not available in M mode or when [Flash Mode] is [Manual])
- Shutter Sync. (1st-curtain/2nd-curtain) (2nd-curtain priority with Speedlite 430EX II)
- Slow Synchro
- Flash Exp. Comp
- Auto Zoom (Not available with the 220EX)
- Manual flash
- High-speed sync
* You can also use 380EX, 420EX, 430EX, 550EX and 580EX.
Replacing the Date Battery

If the Date/Time in the Set up menu appears when the camera power is turned on, the date battery charge is low and the date and time setting have been lost. Please purchase a lithium coin battery (CR1220) and replace it as follows.

The date battery is preinstalled at the factory and may therefore expire earlier than its rated lifespan after the camera has been purchased.

⚠️ Be particularly careful to keep the date batteries out of the reach of children. Seek medical assistance immediately if a child swallows a battery since corrosive battery fluids could damage the stomach or intestinal wall.

1. Confirm that the camera is turned off.
2. Slide the battery cover lock and open the cover.
3. Remove the AA-size batteries, then pull out the battery holder by hooking your fingernail under the center of the battery holder edge.
4 Remove the battery by pulling it up in the direction indicated by the arrow.

5 Insert a new battery with the (+) side facing up.

6 Replace the battery holder and close the battery cover.

7 When the Date/Time menu appears, set the date and time (p. 14).

After purchasing the camera and turning on the power for the first time, although the Date/Time menu will appear, you do not need to replace the date battery.
**Camera Care and Maintenance**

**Camera Body**
Gently wipe dirt off the camera body with a soft cloth or eyeglass lens wiper.

**Lens**
First use a lens blower brush to remove dust and dirt, then remove any remaining dirt by wiping the lens lightly with a soft cloth.

**Viewfinder and LCD Monitor**
Use a lens blower brush to remove dust and dirt. If necessary, gently wipe with a soft cloth or an eyeglass lens wiper to remove stubborn dirt.

Never use thinners, benzine, detergents or water to clean the camera. These substances may distort or damage the equipment.

Never use organic solvents on the camera body or lens. If dirt remains, contact the closest Canon Customer Support Help Desk as listed on the separate customer support list supplied with your camera.

Never rub or press strongly on the LCD monitor. These actions may damage it or lead to other problems.
Specifications

All data is based on Canon’s standard testing methods. Product specifications and appearance are subject to change without notice, at our sole discretion.

**PowerShot SX1 IS** (W): Max. wide angle (T): Max. telephoto

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specifications</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Camera Effective Pixels</td>
<td>Approx. 10.0 million (Aspect ratio 4:3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Approx. 8.4 million (Aspect ratio 16:9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image Sensor</td>
<td>1/2.3-inch type CMOS (Total number of pixels:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Approx. 11.8 million pixels)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens</td>
<td>5.0 (W) – 100.0 (T) mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(35mm film equivalent: 28 (W) – 560 (T) mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(aspect ratio 4:3) / 29 (W) – 580 (T) mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(aspect ratio 16:9))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f/2.8 (W) – f/5.7 (T)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Zoom</td>
<td>Approx. 4.0x (Up to approx. 80x in combination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with the optical zoom)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewfinder</td>
<td>0.40-inch type TFT color, approx. 148,000 dots,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>picture coverage rate 100%, aspect ratio 16:9,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dioptric adjustment: –6.0 to +2.0 m⁻¹ (dpt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD Monitor</td>
<td>2.8-inch type, TFT color LCD, 230,000 dots,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>picture coverage 100% (wide viewing angle and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vari-angle type), aspect ratio 16:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF System</td>
<td>TTL autofocus (continuous/single)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AF lock and manual focus are available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF frame mode</td>
<td>Face Detect<em>¹</em>²*³, center,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FlexiZone*⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*¹ AF frame can be moved and fixed to specified face.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*² If no face is detected, center is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*³ Except Full HD movie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*⁴ AF frame size can be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Focusing Range**                           | Normal: 50 cm (1.6 ft.) – infinity (W)/ 1 m (3.3 ft.) – infinity (T)  
Macro: 10 – 50 cm (W) (3.9 in. – 1.6 ft. (W))  
Super Macro: 0 – 10 cm (0 – 3.9 in.) (W only)  
Manual focus: 10 cm (3.9 in.) – infinity (W)/ 1 m (3.3 ft.) – infinity (T)  
Sports mode: 1 m (3.3 ft.) – infinity (W)/ 4 m (13.1 ft.) – infinity (T) |
| **Shutter**                                  | Mechanical shutter and electronic shutter                                                                                                    |
| **Shutter Speeds**                           | 1/8 – 1/3200 sec.  
15 – 1/3200 sec. (Total shutter speed range)  
• Shutter speeds vary depending on the shooting modes.  
• Slow shutter speeds of 15 to 1.3 sec. or slower operate with noise reduction. |
| **Image Stabilization**                      | Lens-shift type  
Continuous/Shoot Only*/Panning*/Off  
* Still images only.                                                                 |
| **Metering System**                          | Evaluative*¹, Center-weighted average or Spot*²  
*¹ Facial brightness is evaluated in Face Detect AF.  
*² Fixed to center or linked to the AF frame. |
| **Exposure Compensation**                   | ±2 stops in 1/3-stop increments, Auto exposure bracketing (AEB), Safety Shift                                                               |
| **ISO Speed (Standard Output Sensitivity, Recommended Exposure Index)** | Auto*, High ISO Auto*, ISO 80/100/200/400/800/1600  
* Camera automatically sets the optimal speed. |
| **White Balance**                            | Auto*, Day Light, Cloudy, Tungsten, Fluorescent, Fluorescent H, Flash, Custom  
* The colors of faces are evaluated in Face Detect AF. |
| **Built-in Flash**                           | Auto, on, off  
Flash output compensation (±2.0 stops in 1/3-stop increments), Red-Eye Correction, Red-Eye Reduction, flash output settings (3 steps), FE Lock, Slow Synchro, 2nd-curtain Synchro and Safety FE are available.  
• Facial brightness is evaluated in Face Detect AF. |
| **Built-in Flash Range** | 50 cm – 4.8 m (1.6 – 15.7 ft.)(W)/ 1.0 – 2.6 m (T) (3.3 – 8.5 ft.) (T)  
  • Brightness of image periphery may reduce depending on shooting distance. |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| **External Flash**       | Flash output compensation (±3.0 stops in 1/3-stop increments), Red-Eye Correction, Red-eye Reduction, flash output settings (19 levels*), FE Lock, Slow Synchro, 2nd-curtain Synchro, High-Speed Sync, Safety FE and wireless flash (On/Off) are available (580EX II only).  
  * 22 levels with 580EX II |
| **Terminals for External Flash** | Hot shoe flash-sync contacts  
  Use of the following external flashes is recommended:  
  Canon Speedlite 220EX, 430EX II and 580EX II. |
| **Shooting Modes**       | Auto  
  Creative zone:  
  P Program, T shutter-speed priority,  
  A Aperture priority, M Manual, C Custom  
  Image zone:  
  Portrait, Landscape, Night Snapshot, Sports, Special Scene*, Stitch Assist, Movie  
  * Night Scene, Indoor, Sunset, Foliage, Snow, Beach, Fireworks, Long Shutter, Aquarium, ISO 3200, Color Accent and Color Swap. |
| **Continuous Shooting**  | Approx. 4.0 shots/sec.  
  Approx. 1.1 shots/sec. (Continuous Shooting AF)  
  Approx. 1.2 shots/sec. (Continuous Shooting LV)  
  Under the conditions where the flash does not fire automatically. |
| **Self-timer**           | Approx. 10-sec./approx. 2-sec. delay, custom or FaceSelf-timer/Wireless Delay |
| **Wireless Control**     | Shooting and playback are available (wireless controller is included in the camera kit).  
  When shooting, image is captured instantly/approx. 2-sec./approx. 10-sec. after shutter button is pressed. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recording Media</th>
<th>SD memory card/SDHC memory card/MultiMediaCard/MMCplus card/HC MMCplus card</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File Format</td>
<td>Design rule for camera file system and DPOF compliant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Type</td>
<td>Still images: Exif 2.2 (JPEG*)/RAW (CR2)**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Movies: MOV (Image data: H.264; Audio data: Linear PCM (stereo))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sound Memo and Sound Recorder: WAVE (stereo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* This digital camera supports Exif 2.2 (also called “Exif Print”). Exif Print is a standard for enhancing the communication between digital cameras and printers. By connecting to an Exif Print-compliant printer, the camera’s image data at the time of shooting is used and optimized, yielding extremely high quality prints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>** Use Digital Photo Professional to process these files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression</td>
<td>Superfine, Fine, Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Recording Pixels (Still images)</td>
<td>Large: 3648 × 2736 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium 1: 2816 × 2112 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium 2: 2272 × 1704 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium 3: 1600 × 1200 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Small: 640 × 480 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RAW: 3648 × 2736 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Widescreen 8M: 3840 × 2160 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Widescreen 2M: 1920 × 1080 pixels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Recording Pixels (Movies)</td>
<td>Aspect ratio 4:3: 640 × 480 pixels (30 frames/sec.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>320 × 240 pixels (30 frames/sec.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aspect ratio 16:9: 1920 × 1080 pixels (30 frames/sec.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recording can continue until the memory card is full (can record up to a maximum of 4 GB* at one time)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Even if the file size has not reached 4 GB, the recording is stopped when the recording time reaches one hour in aspect ratio 4:3. Depending on memory card capacity and data write speed, recording may stop before the file size reaches 4 GB or the recording time reaches one hour.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Audio | Quantization Bit Rate: 16 bit  
| Sampling Rate  
| Sound Memos: 44.100 kHz  
| Movies: 44.100 kHz  
| Sound Recorder: 44.100 kHz |
|---|---|
| Playback Modes | Single (histogram displayable), Index (12 images), Magnified (approx. 2x to 10x max.), Resume Playback, Image Inspection Tool, Jump, My Category, Trimming, Movie Playback (editing/slowmotion playback possible), Rotate, Slide Show, Red-Eye Correction, i-Contrast, My Colors, Resize, Sound memos (recording/playback up to 1 min.), Sound Recorder (up to 2 hours sound-only recording/playback possible) or Protect. |
| Direct Print | PictBridge compliant, and Canon Direct Print and Bubble Jet Direct compatible |
| My Camera Settings | Start-up image, start-up sound, operation sound, self-timer sound, and shutter sound. |
| Interface | Hi-Speed USB (mini-B)  
| | HDMI Mini Connector  
| | Audio/Video output (NTSC or PAL selectable, stereo audio) |
| Communication Settings | MTP, PTP |
| Power Source | AA-size alkaline batteries (included in the camera kit)  
| | AA-size NiMH batteries (NB-3AH) (sold separately*)  
| * | Supplied with the separately sold NiMH Battery NB4-300 set or the Battery and Charger Kit CBK4-300  
| | Compact Power Adapter (CA-PS700) (sold separately) |
| Operating Temperatures | 0 – 40 °C (32 – 104 °F)  
| | (when NB-3AH is used, 0 – 35 °C (32 – 95 °F)) |
| Operating Humidity | 10 – 90% |
| Dimensions (excluding protrusions) | 127.5 x 88.3 x 87.7 mm (5.02 x 3.48 x 3.45 in.) |
| Weight (camera body only) | Approx. 585 g (20.6 oz.) |
Battery Capacity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Number of Images Shot*</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Playback Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LCD Monitor On</td>
<td>Viewfinder On</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA-size Alkaline Batteries (included with the camera)</td>
<td>Approx. 160 images</td>
<td>Approx. 180 images</td>
<td></td>
<td>Approx. 12 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA-size NiMH Batteries (NB-3AH (fully charged))</td>
<td>Approx. 420 images</td>
<td>Approx. 430 images</td>
<td></td>
<td>Approx. 14 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Based on the CIPA standard

- The actual figures will vary according to the shooting conditions and settings.
- Movie data is excluded.
- At low temperatures, the batteries performance may diminish and the low battery icon may appear very rapidly. In these circumstances, the performance can be improved by warming the batteries in a pocket before use.

Test Conditions

Shooting: Normal temperature (23 ºC ±2 ºC/73 ºF ±3.6 ºF), normal relative humidity (50% ±20%), alternating wide angle end and telephoto end shots at 30 second intervals with the flash fired once every two shots and the camera power turned off after every tenth shot. Power is left off for a sufficient amount of time*, then the power is turned back on and the testing procedure is repeated.

* Until the batteries return to normal temperature

Playback: Normal temperature (23 ºC ±2 ºC/73 ºF ±3.6 ºF), normal relative humidity (50% ±20%), continuous playback at 3 seconds per image.

See Battery (p. 258).
## Memory Cards, Estimated Capacities and Image Data Sizes (Estimated)

### Still Image

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recording Pixels</th>
<th>Compression</th>
<th>Capacity (KB)</th>
<th>2 GB</th>
<th>8 GB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>L</strong> (Large) 3648 × 2736 pixels</td>
<td>📸</td>
<td>4332</td>
<td>448</td>
<td>1792</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>2565</td>
<td>749</td>
<td>2994</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>1226</td>
<td>1536</td>
<td>6140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> (Medium 1) 2816 × 2112 pixels</td>
<td>📸</td>
<td>2720</td>
<td>714</td>
<td>2855</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>1620</td>
<td>1181</td>
<td>4723</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>780</td>
<td>2363</td>
<td>9446</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> (Medium 2) 2272 × 1704 pixels</td>
<td>📸</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>960</td>
<td>3837</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>1116</td>
<td>1707</td>
<td>6822</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>556</td>
<td>3235</td>
<td>12927</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> (Medium 3) 1600 × 1200 pixels</td>
<td>📸</td>
<td>1002</td>
<td>1862</td>
<td>7442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>558</td>
<td>3235</td>
<td>12927</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>6146</td>
<td>24562</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong> (Small) 640 × 480 pixels</td>
<td>📸</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>6830</td>
<td>27291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>10245</td>
<td>40937</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>15368</td>
<td>61406</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LW</strong> (Widescreen 8M) 3840 × 2160 pixels</td>
<td>📸</td>
<td>3600</td>
<td>538</td>
<td>2154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>2132</td>
<td>903</td>
<td>3611</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>1019</td>
<td>1862</td>
<td>7442</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SW</strong> (Widescreen 2M) 1920 × 1080 pixels</td>
<td>📸</td>
<td>1095</td>
<td>1707</td>
<td>6822</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>604</td>
<td>3073</td>
<td>12280</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>5588</td>
<td>22329</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RAW</strong> (RAW) 3648 × 2736 pixels</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>13500</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**RAW + ** 3648 × 2736 pixels</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>16065</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>442</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This reflects standard shooting criteria established by Canon. Actual results may vary according to the subject and shooting conditions.
Movie

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recording Pixels/ Frame Rate</th>
<th>Capacity</th>
<th>2 GB</th>
<th>8 GB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>640 pixels 30 frames/sec.</td>
<td>1402 KB/sec.</td>
<td>22 min. 45 sec.</td>
<td>1 hr. 30 min. 57 sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320 pixels 30 frames/sec.</td>
<td>480 KB/sec.</td>
<td>1 hr. 4 min. 1 sec.</td>
<td>4 hrs. 15 min. 51 sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920 pixels 30 frames/sec.</td>
<td>5296 KB/sec.</td>
<td>6 min. 7 sec.</td>
<td>24 min. 30 sec.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The figures indicate the maximum continuous recording time.
- Depending on your memory card, shooting may end before the maximum recording time is reached. Use of SD Speed Class 4 or higher memory cards is recommended.

Sound Recorder Data Rates and Recording Durations (Estimated)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sound Size</th>
<th>2 GB</th>
<th>8 GB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>44.100 kHz</td>
<td>176 KB/sec.</td>
<td>3 hrs. 10 min. 20 sec.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NiMH Battery NB-3AH

(Supplied with the separately sold NiMH Battery NB4-300 set or the Battery and Charger Kit CBK4-300)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>AA-size nickel metal hydride battery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominal Voltage</td>
<td>1.2 V DC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typical Capacity</td>
<td>2500 mAh (min.: 2300 mAh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cycle Life</td>
<td>Approx. 300 times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating Temperatures</td>
<td>0 – 35 °C (32 – 95 °F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diameter × Length</td>
<td>14.5 mm × 50.0 mm (0.57 × 1.97 in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Approx. 30 g (1.06 oz.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

USA and Canada only:
The Nickel-Metal Hydride battery is recyclable. Please call 1-800-8-BATTERY for information on how to recycle this battery.
### Wireless Controller WL-DC300

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Means of Communication</th>
<th>Infrared</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coverage</td>
<td>Within 5 m (16 ft.) (front)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Directivity            | Within 3 m (9.8 ft.) (15 degrees both left and right)  
                          | Within 1 m (3.3 ft.) (15 degrees both up and down) |
| Power Supply           | Coin-type lithium battery CR2025 |
| Operating Temperatures | 0 – 40 °C (32 – 104 °F) |
| Dimensions             | 35.0 × 6.5 × 56.6 mm (1.38 × 0.26 × 2.23 in.) |
| Weight                 | Approx. 10 g (0.35 oz.) |

### Lens Hood LH-DC50

| Dimensions Diameter × Length | 69.7 mm × 30.0 mm (2.74 × 1.18 in.) |
| Weight                      | Approx. 10 g (0.35 oz.) |

### Battery Charger CB-5AH/CB-5AHE

(Supplied with the separately sold Battery and Charger Kit CBK4-300)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rated Input</th>
<th>100 – 240 V AC (50/60 Hz)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rated Output</td>
<td>565 mA<em>¹ × 4, 1275 mA</em>² × 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charging Time</td>
<td>Approx. 4 hours 40 min.<em>¹, Approx. 2 hours</em>²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating Temperatures</td>
<td>0 – 35 °C (32 – 95 °F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions</td>
<td>65.0 × 105.0 × 27.5 mm (2.56 × 4.13 × 1.08 in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Approx. 95 g (3.35 oz.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*¹ When charging four NB-3AH batteries  
*² When charging two NB-3AH batteries loaded one on each side of the battery charger
## Compact Power Adapter CA-PS700 (Sold Separately)

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rated Input</strong></td>
<td>100 – 240 V AC (50/ 60 Hz)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rated Output</strong></td>
<td>7.4 V DC, 2.0 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Operating Temperatures</strong></td>
<td>0 – 40 °C (32 – 104 °F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dimensions</strong></td>
<td>112.0 × 29.0 × 45.0 mm (4.41 × 1.14 × 1.77 in.) (body only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weight</strong></td>
<td>Approx. 185 g (6.53 oz.) (excluding power cord)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When connecting to and using a household power outlet, use only Compact Power Adapter CA-PS700 (rated input: 100 – 240 V AC 50/ 60 Hz, rated output: 7.4 V DC). Using anything else can cause fire, overheating, or electrical shock.
Index

Numerics

16:9 ........................................... 80
3:2 Guide ................................. 65

A

Accessories ......................... 36
AE Lock .............................. 133
AEB Mode .......................... 138
AF Frame .......................... 49
AF Lock ........................... 127
AF Mode .......................... 119
AF-assist Beam .......... 40, 55
AF-Point Zoom ........ 115
Aperture Value .... 103, 104, 106
Aquarium ......................... 99
Aspect Ratio ...................... 80
Audio ................................ 95
Auto Category ................. 152
Auto ISO Shift ............... 87
Auto Mode ...................... 17
Auto Rotate ................... 228
Av .................................. 104

B

Battery
   Battery Capacity ........ 286
   Battery Charge Indicator .... 50
   Installing ..................... 10
Beach .................................. 99

C

C ........................................ 153
Camera Shake Warning ... 50, 239
Category
   Auto Category ................. 152
   My Category .................. 164
   Clock Display ............... 46
   Color Accent ............. 100, 147
   Color Swap ................. 100, 149
   Components Guide .......... 40
   Compression .................. 83
   Computer
   Connecting ...................... 29
   Downloading Images ........ 28
   System Requirements ........ 27
   Continuous Shooting ....... 110
   Control Dial ................... 43
   Create Folder ................. 226
   Custom Display ............. 65
   Custom Settings ............ 153

D

Date Battery .................... 278
Date/Time ......................... 14
Digital Photo Professional
   ......................................... 284, 295
Digital Tele-Converter ...... 68
Digital Zoom .................. 68
Direct Print Compatible Printer
   ........................................ 38
Direct Transfer ................ 31
Display Information ........... 65
Display Language ............. 15
Distance Units ................. 59
DPOF Print Settings .......... 209
DPOF Transfer Settings ...... 217

E

Erase ........................... 203
Erasing ........................... 20
Externally Mounted Flash ..... 270
F
Face Detect ............................. 120
Face Select and Track ............ 124
FE Lock ................................... 135
File Numbering ...................... 224
Fireworks .................................. 99
Flash
Flash Exp. Comp .................. 112
Settings ............................... 112
Shooting ............................... 72
Focus ............................. 117, 120, 160
Focus Check ..................... 63, 117
Focus Check Display .............. 160
Focus Lock .............................. 127
Focus Settings ..................... 119
Focus-BKT Mode .................... 132
Foliage .................................... 98
Frame Rate .............................. 93
Full High-Definition ............ 90, 233
FUNC. Menu ............................. 53
Functions Available in Each
Shooting Mode ...................... 300
G
Grid Lines .................................. 65
H
HDMI ................................. 41, 233
High-Definition ................. 90, 233
Histogram Function ............... 52
I
i-Contrast ........................ 137, 190
Image Stabilizer ..................... 84
Image Type ............................. 295
Index Playback ........................ 159
Indicator ............................. 42, 45
Indoor ................................... 98
ISO 3200 ............................. 100
ISO Speed ................................ 86
J
Jump .................................... 162
L
Landscape .............................. 97
LCD Brightness ..................... 59
LCD Monitor Display ............... 62
Lens Cap ................... 117, 120, 160
Lens Hood ............................. 266
Lens Retract ........................... 59
List of Messages .................... 248
Lithium Battery ..................... 262, 278
Long Shutter ........................... 99
M
M ........................................ 106
Macro ...................................... 73
Magnify Display
Focus Check ....................... 117
MF ...................................... 129
Playback ................................ 158
Manual Focus ......................... 129
Memory Card
Estimated Capacities ........... 287
Format .......................... 16, 223
Installing ............................. 11
Menu
My Camera Menu .............. 234
My Menu ............................. 156
Play Menu .............................. 56
Print Menu ............................. 57
Rec. Menu ............................. 54
Set up Menu .......................... 58
Setting .................................. 47
Metering Mode .................... 139
MF-Point Zoom .................... 55, 129
Microphone .......................... 24, 95
Microphone Level ................. 95
Index

Mode Dial ................................. 89
Movie
   Editing ................................. 174
   Shooting .............................. 24, 90
Transfer ................................. 172
   Viewing ................................ 26, 170
Mute ........................................ 58
My Camera Settings ............... 234
   Changing .............................. 234
   Registering ........................... 235
My Category .............................. 164
My Colors ................................ 144
My Colors (Playback) .............. 192
My Menu .................................. 156
N
Neck Strap ................................ 13
Night Display ............................. 64
Night Scene ................................ 98
Night Snapshot ........................... 98
O
Overexposure Warning ............. 52
P
P .................................................. 101
Playback Button ..................... 44
   Portrait .................................. 97
   Power Kit ............................... 267
   Power Saving ........................... 59, 219
   Power Supply
      Compact Power Adapter ........... 269, 290
      Rechargeable Battery ............. 267, 288
   Press fully .............................. 18
   Press halfway .......................... 17
Print List .................................. 23
Print Method ............................. 60
Print/Share Button ................. 42
Printing ..................................... 21
Program AE ............................... 101
Protect ..................................... 199
R
RAW .......................................... 295
Rec. Review .............................. 18
Recording Functions .............. 95
Recording Pixels ..................... 81, 93
Red-Eye Corr. (Shooting) ....... 113
Red-Eye Correction (Playback)
   ........................................... 185
Red-Eye Lamp ........................... 113
Registering Functions ............ 154
Remote Sensor ...................... 40, 263
Reset All .................................. 230
Resize ....................................... 194
Resume Playback .................. 19, 56
Review ....................................... 55
Review Info ............................. 117
Rotate ....................................... 177
S
Safety FE .................................... 113
Safety MF ................................... 130
Safety Shift .............................. 130
Safety Zoom ............................. 69
Self-Timer ................................... 75
Servo AF ................................... 126
Shooting Mode ......................... 89
Shortcut Button ..................... 154
Shutter Button ........................... 17
Shutter Speed ............................ 102, 106
Slide Shows ............................. 179
Snow .......................................... 99
Sound Memo ............................. 196
Sound Recorder .......................... 197
Sports ......................................... 98
Stitch Assist ............................. 108
Sunset ......................................... 98
Super Macro ........................................ 73
System Map ........................................ 34

T
Telephoto ........................................... 67, 68
Time and Date
   Clock Display .................................. 46
Time Zone ........................................... 220
Transition ......................................... 178
Trimming ............................................ 167
Tv ....................................................... 102
TV Set ............................................... 231, 233

V
Video System ....................................... 60
Viewfinder .......................................... 62
Volume ............................................... 58

W
White Balance ...................................... 141
Wide Angle ......................................... 67
Wind Filter .......................................... 95
Wireless Controller ............................... 262
Wireless Delay ..................................... 264
World Clock ........................................ 220
This camera records images as either JPEG images or RAW images.

**JPEG image (L/M1/M2/M3/S/LW/SW)**
When pictures are taken as JPEG images, the images are processed inside the camera for optimum image quality, and also compressed to allow a larger number of images to be stored on the memory card. However, the compression process is irreversible, meaning that the original image data cannot be recovered once it has been compressed. See *Changing the Recording Pixels (Still Images)* and *Changing the Compression (Still Images)* (pp. 81, 83).

**RAW image (RAW)**
RAW data is the data output by the imaging element and converted to digital data which is recorded as is. This results in images with almost no deterioration in image quality and a higher quality than JPEG images. Using the supplied software (Digital Photo Professional), you can broadly adjust images without deterioration in image quality. Using the software’s image processing functions, you can take the adjusted image data and convert it a JPEG, TIFF or other type of image in line with your intended use.

You cannot use direct print or make print (DPOF) settings with images taken with RAW, however.

- When downloading RAW images and simultaneously recorded JPEG images, be sure to use the supplied software.
- RAW mode cannot be used in the [16:9] aspect ratio (p. 80).
1. **Select** **RAW**.
   1. Press the `FUNC SET` button.
   2. Use the ↑ or ↓ button to select **L** and the ← or → to select **RAW**.
   3. Press the `FUNC` button.
Simultaneously Recording RAW and JPEG Images

On

Two images, a RAW image (RAW) and a JPEG image (L/Large, Fine), will be recorded with each shot. Since a JPEG image is also recorded, you can print the image, or view it on a computer, without using the supplied software. Both images are saved with the same file number to the same folder, and can be distinguished by their file extension. RAW images end with “.CR2”, while JPEG images end with “.JPG”.

Off

Only RAW images are recorded.

1 Select [Record RAW + L].
   1. Press the MENU button.
   2. In the menu, use the or button to select [Record RAW + L].

2 Make settings.
   1. Use the or button to select [On] or [Off].
   2. Press the MENU button.
FCC Notice
(Digital Camera, Model PC1331 Systems)
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for Class B digital devices, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

• Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
• Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
• Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
• Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

The cable with the ferrite core provided with the digital camera must be used with this equipment in order to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of the FCC rules.

Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

Canon U.S.A., Inc.
One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, NY 11042, U.S.A.
Tel No. (516) 328-5600

Canadian Radio Interference Regulations
This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Réglementation canadienne sur les interférences radio
Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.
Disclaimer

- While every effort has been made to ensure that the information contained in this guide is accurate and complete, no liability can be accepted for any errors or omissions.
- Canon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described herein at anytime without prior notice.
- No part of this guide may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without the prior written permission of Canon.
- Canon makes no warranties for damages resulting from corrupted or lost data due to a mistaken operation or malfunction of the camera, the software, SD memory cards (SD cards), personal computers, peripheral devices, or use of non-Canon SD cards.

Trademark Acknowledgments

- The SDHC logo is a trademark.
- HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

About MPEG-4 Licensing

“This product is licensed under AT&T patents for the MPEG-4 standard and may be used for encoding MPEG-4 compliant video and/or decoding MPEG-4 compliant video that was encoded only (1) for a personal and non-commercial purpose or (2) by a video provider licensed under the AT&T patents to provide MPEG-4 compliant video. No license is granted or implied for any other use for MPEG-4 standard.”
* Notice displayed in English as required.

For CA, USA only

Included lithium battery contains Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply.
See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/ for details.
## Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode

Only functions with settings that change with the shooting mode are listed here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Shooting Mode</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Av</th>
<th>Tv</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>Auto</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exposure Compensation (p. 136)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO Speed (p. 86)</td>
<td>Auto&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Balance (p. 141)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Mode (pp. 75, 110, 262)</td>
<td>Single Shot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Mode (pp. 75, 110, 262)</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Mode (pp. 75, 110, 262)</td>
<td>Continuous AF&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Mode (pp. 75, 110, 262)</td>
<td>Face Self-timer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Mode (pp. 75, 110, 262)</td>
<td>Self-Timer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Mode (pp. 75, 110, 262)</td>
<td>Wireless Delay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My Colors (p. 144)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bracketing (pp. 132, 138)</td>
<td>AE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Exposure Compensation (p. 112)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-in Flash Output Control (p. 112)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Flash Output Control (p. 273)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metering System (p. 139)</td>
<td>Evaluative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eurometer System (p. 139)</td>
<td>Center-weighted Average</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eurometer System (p. 139)</td>
<td>Spot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Recording Pixels (still images) (p. 81)</td>
<td>L/M1/M2/M3/S/LW/SW</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Recording Pixels/Frame Rate (movies) (p. 93)</td>
<td>1920 × 1080, 30 fps</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Recording Pixels/Frame Rate (movies) (p. 93)</td>
<td>640 × 480, fps/320 × 240, 30 fps</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Av/Tv Setting (pp. 104, 102)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program Shift (p. 134)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE/FE Lock (still images) (pp. 133, 135)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimum Exposure Setting in Manual Mode (p. 106)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE Lock, Exposure Shift (p. 92)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shooting Zone (p. 73)</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shooting Zone (p. 73)</td>
<td>Macro</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shooting Zone (p. 73)</td>
<td>Super Macro</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>SCN</td>
<td>Functions Available</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Functions available in each shooting mode.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Shooting Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manual Focus (p. 129)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF Frame Size (p. 123)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Face Select and Track (p. 124)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash (when flash is raised) (p. 72)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD Monitor/Viewfinder Setting (p. 62)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD monitor (no information)</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD monitor (information view)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewfinder (no information)</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewfinder (information view)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stitch Direction Selection (Right, Left, Top, Bottom, 2 × 2) (p. 108)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF Frame (p. 120)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Face Detect</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FlexiZone</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-Point Zoom (p. 115)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF Mode (p. 119)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Zoom (p. 68)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Tele-converter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Correction (p. 115)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Eye Lamp</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Exp. Comp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash Output</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter Sync. (1st curtain, 2nd curtain)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow Synchro</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety FE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-Contrast (p. 137)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive Setting (p. 75)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FaceSelf-timer</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-Timer (10 sec. /2 sec.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Timer</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wireless Delay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spot AE Point (p. 140)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>C  M  Av  Tv  P  AUTO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF Point</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety Shift (p. 103)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode

303

1)

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
{12)
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
{12)
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

–
{
–
–
–
–
–
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
{
–
–
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
{12)
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
{12)
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

C

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

–
{
–
–
–
–
–
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
{
–
{
–
–
{
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
{
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
–
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
{
{12)
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
–
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{
–
–
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
–

Y
P
O

{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
{
–
{
{
{
{
–
–
{
–
–
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
–
{
–
–
–

–
{
–
–
–
–
{
–
–
{
{
{
{
{
–
{
–
–
{
{
{
–
–
{
–
–
{
–
–
–
{
–
–
–
{
–
{
–
–
–

{
{
–
{
{7)
–
–
–
–
{
{
{
{
–
{7)
{7)
–
–
–
{
–
{
{
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
–
{
–
{
–
–
–


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>Av</th>
<th>Tv</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>AUTO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auto ISO Shift (p. 87)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MF-Point Zoom (p. 129)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety MF (p. 130)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-assist Beam (p. 55)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review (Rec. review) (p. 55)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review Info (p. 55)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Save Original (p. 151)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse Disp. (p. 13)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Category (p. 152)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS Mode (p. 84)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoot Only/Panning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Display (p. 65)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid Lines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2 Guide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histogram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registering settings to the Shortcut button (p. 154)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Settings (Saved in the custom (C) mode) (p. 153)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

〇: Setting available or optimal value is automatically set by the camera. As a rule, with Stitch Assist, only the first image is available.
□: Setting available (depending on the shooting mode saved in custom (C) mode)
△: Selectable only, no settings available.
—: Not available.

1) Can be combined with Color Accent or Color Swap on shooting mode.
2) Set to optimal value depending on each shooting mode.
3) Fix to ISO 3200.
4) Set to Continuous Shooting LV when Manual Focus or Fireworks is selected.
5) Fix to [ ] (aspect ratio: 4:3) or [ ] (aspect ratio: 16:9).
6) [ ] or [ ] is not available.
7) Only available for shooting still images.
8) Only available for shooting movies.
9) Only Av (Aperture Value) can be set.
10) Only Tv (Shutter Speed) can be set.
11) FE Lock is not available.
12) Always set to on.
13) Available when the flash fires.
14) [ ] is not available.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCN</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beach</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landscape</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Night</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Super Macro</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue Sky</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunset</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starlight</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 3200</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) This mode is not available in the Advanced Mode.
Ensure that you read the Safety Precautions (pp. 252 – 261).

Getting Started

p. 9